

# Package ‘edgeR’

December 3, 2024

**Version** 4.5.1

**Date** 2024-11-30

**Title** Empirical Analysis of Digital Gene Expression Data in R

**Description** Differential expression analysis of RNA-seq expression profiles with biological replication. Implements a range of statistical methodology based on the negative binomial distributions, including empirical Bayes estimation, exact tests, generalized linear models and quasi-likelihood tests. As well as RNA-seq, it be applied to differential signal analysis of other types of genomic data that produce read counts, including ChIP-seq, ATAC-seq, Bisulfite-seq, SAGE and CAGE.

**Author** Yunshun Chen, Aaron TL Lun, Davis J McCarthy, Lizhong Chen, Pedro Baldoni, Matthew E Ritchie, Belinda Phipson, Yifang Hu, Xiaobei Zhou, Mark D Robinson, Gordon K Smyth

**Maintainer** Yunshun Chen <yuchen@wehi.edu.au>, Gordon Smyth <smyth@wehi.edu.au>, Aaron Lun <infinite.monkeys.with.keyboards@gmail.com>, Mark Robinson <mark.robinson@imls.uzh.ch>

**License** GPL (>=2)

**Depends** R (>= 3.6.0), limma (>= 3.61.9)

**Imports** methods, graphics, stats, utils, locfit

**Suggests** jsonlite, readr, rhdf5, splines, knitr, AnnotationDbi, Biobase, BiocStyle, SummarizedExperiment, org.Hs.eg.db, Matrix, SeuratObject

**VignetteBuilder** knitr

**URL** <https://bioinf.wehi.edu.au/edgeR/>,  
<https://bioconductor.org/packages/edgeR>

**biocViews** GeneExpression, Transcription, AlternativeSplicing, Coverage, DifferentialExpression, DifferentialSplicing, DifferentialMethylation, GeneSetEnrichment, Pathways, Genetics, DNAMethylation, Bayesian, Clustering, ChIPSeq, Regression, TimeCourse, Sequencing, RNASeq, BatchEffect, SAGE, Normalization, QualityControl, MultipleComparison, BiomedicalInformatics, CellBiology, FunctionalGenomics, Epigenetics, Genetics, ImmunoOncology, SystemsBiology, Transcriptomics, SingleCell

**NeedsCompilation** yes  
**git\_url** <https://git.bioconductor.org/packages/edgeR>  
**git\_branch** devel  
**git\_last\_commit** 380f86e  
**git\_last\_commit\_date** 2024-11-30  
**Repository** Bioconductor 3.21  
**Date/Publication** 2024-12-03

## Contents

|   |    |
|---|----|
| edgeR-package . . . . .                 | 4  |
| addPriorCount . . . . .                 | 6  |
| adjustedProfileLik . . . . .            | 7  |
| as.data.frame . . . . .                 | 9  |
| as.matrix . . . . .                     | 10 |
| aveLogCPM . . . . .                     | 11 |
| binomTest . . . . .                     | 12 |
| camera . . . . .                        | 14 |
| catchSalmon . . . . .                   | 16 |
| cbind . . . . .                         | 18 |
| commonCondLogLikDerDelta . . . . .      | 19 |
| condLogLikDerSize . . . . .             | 20 |
| cpm . . . . .                           | 21 |
| cutWithMinN . . . . .                   | 24 |
| decideTests . . . . .                   | 25 |
| DGEEexact-class . . . . .               | 26 |
| DGEGLM-class . . . . .                  | 27 |
| DGEList . . . . .                       | 28 |
| DGEList-class . . . . .                 | 30 |
| DGELRT-class . . . . .                  | 31 |
| diffSpliceDGE . . . . .                 | 32 |
| dim . . . . .                           | 34 |
| dimnames . . . . .                      | 35 |
| dispBinTrend . . . . .                  | 36 |
| dispCoxReid . . . . .                   | 38 |
| dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise . . . . . | 40 |
| dispCoxReidSplineTrend . . . . .        | 42 |
| dropEmptyLevels . . . . .               | 43 |
| edgeRUsersGuide . . . . .               | 44 |
| equalizeLibSizes . . . . .              | 45 |
| estimateCommonDisp . . . . .            | 47 |
| estimateDisp . . . . .                  | 48 |
| estimateExonGenewiseDisp . . . . .      | 51 |
| estimateGLMCommonDisp . . . . .         | 52 |
| estimateGLMRobustDisp . . . . .         | 54 |
| estimateGLMTagwiseDisp . . . . .        | 55 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| estimateGLMTrendedDisp . . . . .         | 57  |
| estimateTagwiseDisp . . . . .            | 59  |
| estimateTrendedDisp . . . . .            | 61  |
| exactTest . . . . .                      | 62  |
| expandAsMatrix . . . . .                 | 65  |
| featureCounts2DGEList . . . . .          | 66  |
| filterByExpr . . . . .                   | 67  |
| getCounts . . . . .                      | 68  |
| getNormLibSizes . . . . .                | 69  |
| getPriorN . . . . .                      | 70  |
| gini . . . . .                           | 72  |
| glmFit . . . . .                         | 73  |
| glmLRT . . . . .                         | 75  |
| glmQLFit . . . . .                       | 77  |
| glmQLFTest . . . . .                     | 81  |
| glmTreat . . . . .                       | 83  |
| goana.DGELRT . . . . .                   | 85  |
| gof . . . . .                            | 87  |
| goodTuring . . . . .                     | 89  |
| head . . . . .                           | 91  |
| loessByCol . . . . .                     | 92  |
| makeCompressedMatrix . . . . .           | 93  |
| maPlot . . . . .                         | 96  |
| maximizeInterpolant . . . . .            | 97  |
| maximizeQuadratic . . . . .              | 98  |
| meanvar . . . . .                        | 99  |
| mglm . . . . .                           | 102 |
| modelMatrixMeth . . . . .                | 105 |
| movingAverageByCol . . . . .             | 106 |
| nbinomDeviance . . . . .                 | 107 |
| nbinomUnitDeviance . . . . .             | 108 |
| nearestReftoX . . . . .                  | 109 |
| nearestTSS . . . . .                     | 110 |
| normalizeBetweenArrays.DGEList . . . . . | 111 |
| normalizeChIPtoInput . . . . .           | 112 |
| normLibSizes . . . . .                   | 114 |
| plotBCV . . . . .                        | 117 |
| plotExonUsage . . . . .                  | 118 |
| plotMD.DGEList . . . . .                 | 119 |
| plotMDS.DGEList . . . . .                | 121 |
| plotMeanVar2 . . . . .                   | 123 |
| plotQLDisp . . . . .                     | 125 |
| plotSmear . . . . .                      | 126 |
| plotSpliceDGE . . . . .                  | 128 |
| predFC . . . . .                         | 129 |
| processAmplicons . . . . .               | 130 |
| q2qnbinom . . . . .                      | 133 |
| read10X . . . . .                        | 134 |

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| readBismark2DGE . . . . .            | 135 |
| readDGE . . . . .                    | 136 |
| roast.DGEGLM . . . . .               | 138 |
| roast.DGEList . . . . .              | 140 |
| romer.DGEGLM . . . . .               | 142 |
| romer.DGEList . . . . .              | 144 |
| rowsum . . . . .                     | 146 |
| scaleOffset . . . . .                | 147 |
| SE2DGEList . . . . .                 | 148 |
| Seurat2PB . . . . .                  | 149 |
| spliceVariants . . . . .             | 150 |
| splitIntoGroups . . . . .            | 151 |
| subsetting . . . . .                 | 152 |
| sumTechReps . . . . .                | 154 |
| systematicSubset . . . . .           | 155 |
| thinCounts . . . . .                 | 156 |
| topSpliceDGE . . . . .               | 157 |
| topTags . . . . .                    | 158 |
| validDGEList . . . . .               | 160 |
| voomLmFit . . . . .                  | 161 |
| weightedCondLogLikDerDelta . . . . . | 163 |
| WLEB . . . . .                       | 165 |
| zscoreNBinom . . . . .               | 167 |

|              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| <b>Index</b> | <b>169</b> |
|--------------|------------|

---

edgeR-package

*Empirical analysis of digital gene expression data in R*

---

## Description

edgeR is a package for the analysis of digital gene expression data arising from RNA sequencing technologies such as SAGE, CAGE, Tag-seq or RNA-seq, with emphasis on testing for differential expression. It can also be used for other sequencing technologies from which read counts are produced, such as ChIP-seq, Hi-C or CRISPR.

Particular strengths of the package include the ability to estimate biological variation between replicate libraries, and to conduct exact tests of significance which are suitable for small counts. The package is able to make use of even minimal numbers of replicates.

The supplied counts are assumed to be those of genes in a RNA-seq experiment. However, counts can be supplied for any genomic feature of interest, e.g., tags, transcripts, exons, or even arbitrary intervals of the genome.

An extensive User's Guide is available, and can be opened by typing `edgeRUsersGuide()` at the R prompt. Detailed help pages are also provided for each individual function.

The edgeR package implements original statistical methodology described in the publications below.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen, Aaron TL Lun, Davis J McCarthy, Lizhong Chen, Pedro Baldoni, Matthew E Ritchie, Belinda Phipson, Yifang Hu, Xiaobei Zhou, Mark D Robinson, Gordon K Smyth

**References**

- Baldoni PL, Chen L, Smyth GK (2024). Faster and more accurate assessment of differential transcript expression with Gibbs sampling and edgeR v4. *NAR Genomics and Bioinformatics*. doi:10.1101/2024.06.25.600555.
- Chen Y, Chen L, Lun ATL, Baldoni PL, Smyth GK (2024). edgeR 4.0: powerful differential analysis of sequencing data with expanded functionality and improved support for small counts and larger datasets. *bioRxiv* 2024/576131. doi:10.1101/2024.01.21.576131
- Baldoni PL#, Chen Y#, Hedyeh-zadeh S, Liao Y, Dong X, Ritchie ME, Shi W, Smyth GK (2024). Dividing out quantification uncertainty allows efficient assessment of differential transcript expression with edgeR. *Nucleic Acids Research* 52, e13.
- Chen Y, Pal B, Visvader JE, Smyth GK (2017). Differential methylation analysis of reduced representation bisulfite sequencing experiments using edgeR. *F1000Research* 6, 2055.
- Lun, AT, Smyth GK (2017). No counts, no variance: allowing for loss of degrees of freedom when assessing biological variability from RNA-seq data. *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* 16(2), 83-93.
- Chen Y, Lun ATL, Smyth GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using Rsubread and the edgeR quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438.
- Lun ATL, Chen Y, Smyth GK (2016). It's DE-licious: a recipe for differential expression analyses of RNA-seq experiments using quasi-likelihood methods in edgeR. *Methods in Molecular Biology* 1418, 391-416. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/QLedgeRPreprint.pdf>
- Dai Z, Sheridan JM, Gearing LJ, Moore DL, Su S, Wormald S, Wilcox S, O'Connor L, Dickins RA, Blewitt ME, Ritchie ME (2014). edgeR: a versatile tool for the analysis of shRNA-seq and CRISPR-Cas9 genetic screens. *F1000Research* 3, 95.
- Chen Y, Lun ATL, Smyth GK (2014). Differential expression analysis of complex RNA-seq experiments using edgeR. In: *Statistical Analysis of Next Generation Sequence Data*, Somnath Datta and Daniel S Nettleton (eds), Springer, New York, pages 51-74. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/edgeRChapterPreprint.pdf>
- Zhou X, Lindsay H, Robinson MD (2014). Robustly detecting differential expression in RNA sequencing data using observation weights. *Nucleic Acids Research* 42, e91.
- Anders S, McCarthy DJ, Chen Y, Okoniewski M, Smyth GK, Huber W, Robinson MD (2013). Count-based differential expression analysis of RNA sequencing data using R and Bioconductor. *Nature Protocols* 8, 1765-1786.
- McCarthy DJ#, Chen Y#, Smyth GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297.
- Robinson MD, Oshlack A (2010). A scaling normalization method for differential expression analysis of RNA-seq data. *Genome Biology*, 11, R25.
- Robinson MD, McCarthy DJ, Smyth GK (2010). edgeR: a Bioconductor package for differential expression analysis of digital gene expression data. *Bioinformatics* 26, 139-140

Robinson MD, Smyth GK (2008). Small-sample estimation of negative binomial dispersion, with applications to SAGE data. *Biostatistics*, 9, 321-332

Robinson MD, Smyth GK (2007). Moderated statistical tests for assessing differences in tag abundance. *Bioinformatics* 23, 2881-2887 )

---

addPriorCount                      *Add a prior count*

---

### Description

Add a library size-adjusted prior count to each observation.

### Usage

```
addPriorCount(y, lib.size=NULL, offset=NULL, prior.count=1)
```

### Arguments

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>y</code>           | a numeric count matrix, with rows corresponding to genes and columns to libraries. |
| <code>lib.size</code>    | a numeric vector of library sizes.   |
| <code>offset</code>      | a numeric vector or matrix of offsets.   |
| <code>prior.count</code> | a numeric scalar or vector of prior counts to be added to each gene.               |

### Details

This function adds a positive prior count to each observation, often useful for avoiding zeroes during calculation of log-values. For example, [predFC](#) will call this function to calculate shrunken log-fold changes. [aveLogCPM](#) and [cpm](#) also use the same underlying code to calculate (average) log-counts per million.

The actual value added to the counts for each library is scaled according to the library size. This ensures that the relative contribution of the prior is the same for each library. Otherwise, a fixed prior would have little effect on a large library, but a big effect for a small library.

The library sizes are also modified, with twice the scaled prior being added to the library size for each library. To understand the motivation for this, consider that each observation is, effectively, a proportion of the total count in the library. The addition scheme implemented here represents an empirical logistic transform and ensures that the proportion can never be zero or one.

If `offset` is supplied, this is used in favour of `lib.size` where `exp(offset)` is defined as the vector/matrix of library sizes. If an offset matrix is supplied, this will lead to gene-specific scaling of the prior as described above.

Most use cases of this function will involve supplying a constant value to `prior.count` for all genes. However, it is also possible to use gene-specific values by supplying a vector of length equal to the number of rows in `y`.

**Value**

A list is returned containing `y`, a matrix of counts with the added priors; and `offset`, a Compressed-Matrix containing the (log-transformed) modified library sizes.

**Author(s)**

Aaron Lun

**See Also**

[aveLogCPM](#), [cpm](#), [predFC](#)

**Examples**

```
original <- matrix(rnbinom(1000, mu=20, size=10), nrow=200)
head(original)

out <- addPriorCount(original)
head(out$y)
head(out$offset)
```

---

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| adjustedProfileLik | <i>Adjusted Profile Likelihood for the Negative Binomial Dispersion Parameter</i> |
|--------------------|---|

---

**Description**

Compute adjusted profile log-likelihoods for the dispersion parameters of genewise negative binomial glms.

**Usage**

```
adjustedProfileLik(dispersion, y, design, offset, weights=NULL, adjust=TRUE,
  start=NULL, get.coef=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| dispersion | numeric scalar or vector of dispersions.   |
| y          | numeric matrix of counts.  |
| design     | numeric matrix giving the design matrix.   |
| offset     | numeric matrix of same size as <code>y</code> giving offsets for the log-linear models. Can also be a scalar (i.e., a single value) or a vector of length <code>ncol(y)</code> , in which case it is expanded out to a matrix. |
| weights    | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights.  |
| adjust     | logical, if TRUE then Cox-Reid adjustment is made to the log-likelihood, if FALSE then the log-likelihood is returned without adjustment.  |

`start` numeric matrix of starting values for the GLM coefficients, to be passed to `glmFit`.

`get.coef` logical, specifying whether fitted GLM coefficients should be returned.

### Details

For each row of data, compute the adjusted profile log-likelihood for the dispersion parameter of the negative binomial glm. The adjusted profile likelihood is described by McCarthy et al (2012) and is based on the method of Cox and Reid (1987).

The adjusted profile likelihood is an approximation to the log-likelihood function, conditional on the estimated values of the coefficients in the NB log-linear models. The conditional likelihood approach is a technique for adjusting the likelihood function to allow for the fact that nuisance parameters have to be estimated in order to evaluate the likelihood. When estimating the dispersion, the nuisance parameters are the coefficients in the log-linear model.

This implementation calls the LAPACK library to perform the Cholesky decomposition during adjustment estimation.

The purpose of `start` and `get.coef` is to allow hot-starting for multiple calls to `adjustedProfileLik`, when only the dispersion is altered. Specifically, the returned GLM coefficients from one call with `get.coef==TRUE` can be used as the `start` values for the next call.

The `weights` argument is interpreted in terms of averages. Each value of `y` is assumed to be the average of `n` independent and identically distributed NB counts, where `n` is given by the weight. This assumption can be generalized to fractional weights.

### Value

If `get.coef==FALSE`, a vector of adjusted profile log-likelihood values is returned containing one element for each row of `y`.

Otherwise, a list is returned containing `ap1`, the aforementioned vector of adjusted profile likelihoods, and `beta`, the numeric matrix of fitted GLM coefficients.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth, Aaron Lun

### References

Cox, DR, and Reid, N (1987). Parameter orthogonality and approximate conditional inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* 49, 1-39.

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

### See Also

[glmFit](#)



**Examples**

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(30, mu=10, size=20), 10, 3)
design <- matrix(1, 3, 1)
dispersion <- 0.05
adjustedProfileLik(dispersion, y, design, offset=0)
```

---

`as.data.frame`*Collapse TopTags or Other edgeR Object to a Data Frame*

---

**Description**

Turn a TopTags object into a data.frame.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'TopTags'
as.data.frame(x, row.names = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>x</code>         | an object of class TopTags, DGEList, DGEGLM, DGEEExact or DGELRT.                                   |
| <code>row.names</code> | NULL or a character vector giving the row names for the data frame. Missing values are not allowed. |
| <code>...</code>       | other arguments are not currently used.   |

**Details**

Convert edgeR objects into data.frames. This method returns the table component of a TopTags object. For DGEEExact and DGELRT objects, the genes and table components are combined into a data.frame, similar to what is done by topTags but without sorting or p-value adjustment. For DGEList, the genes and counts components are combined into a data.frame.

Amongst other things, this functionality allows edgeR objects to be written to files using `write.table` or `write.csv`.

**Value**

A data.frame.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[as.data.frame](#) in the base package.

---

`as.matrix`*Collapse a DGEList or DGEGLM Object to a Matrix*

---

**Description**

Coerce a digital gene expression object into a numeric matrix by extracting the count values.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'  
as.matrix(x,...)
```

**Arguments**

`x` an object of class `DGEList` or `DGEGLM`.  
`...` additional arguments, not used for these methods.

**Details**

This method extracts the matrix of counts from a `DGEList` or the matrix of coefficients from a `DGEGLM` fit.

This involves loss of information, so the original data object is not recoverable.

**Value**

A numeric matrix.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[as.matrix](#) in the base package or [as.matrix](#) in the `limma` package.

---

|           |                                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| aveLogCPM | <i>Average Log Counts Per Million</i> |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|

---

### Description

Compute average log<sub>2</sub> counts-per-million for each row of counts.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
aveLogCPM(y, normalized.lib.sizes=TRUE, prior.count=2, dispersion=NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
aveLogCPM(y, normalized.lib.sizes=TRUE, prior.count=2,
          dispersion=NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
aveLogCPM(y, lib.size=NULL, offset=NULL, prior.count=2, dispersion=NULL,
          weights=NULL, ...)
```

### Arguments

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>y</code>                    | numeric matrix containing counts. Rows for genes and columns for libraries.  |
| <code>normalized.lib.sizes</code> | logical, use normalized library sizes?   |
| <code>prior.count</code>          | numeric scalar or vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> , containing the average value(s) to be added to each count to avoid infinite values on the log-scale. |
| <code>dispersion</code>           | numeric scalar or vector of negative-binomial dispersions. Defaults to 0.05.   |
| <code>lib.size</code>             | numeric vector of library sizes. Defaults to <code>colSums(y)</code> . Ignored if <code>offset</code> is not <code>NULL</code> .                               |
| <code>offset</code>               | numeric matrix of offsets for the log-linear models.   |
| <code>weights</code>              | optional numeric matrix of observation weights.  |
| <code>...</code>                  | other arguments are not currently used.  |

### Details

This function uses `mglmOneGroup` to compute average counts-per-million (AveCPM) for each row of counts, and returns `log2(AveCPM)`. An average value of `prior.count` is added to the counts before running `mglmOneGroup`. If `prior.count` is a vector, each entry will be added to all counts in the corresponding row of `y`, as described in [addPriorCount](#).

This function is similar to

```
log2(rowMeans(cpm(y, ...))),
```

but with the refinement that larger library sizes are given more weight in the average. The two versions will agree for large values of the dispersion.

**Value**

Numeric vector giving  $\log_2(\text{AveCPM})$  for each row of  $y$ .

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

See [cpm](#) for individual  $\log\text{CPM}$  values, rather than genewise averages.

Addition of the prior count is performed using the strategy described in [addPriorCount](#).

The computations for  $\text{aveLogCPM}$  are done by [mg1mOneGroup](#).

**Examples**

```
y <- matrix(c(0,100,30,40),2,2)
lib.size <- c(1000,10000)

# With disp large, the function is equivalent to row-wise averages of individual cpm:
aveLogCPM(y, dispersion=1e4)
cpm(y, log=TRUE, prior.count=2)

# With disp=0, the function is equivalent to pooling the counts before dividing by lib.size:
aveLogCPM(y,prior.count=0,dispersion=0)
cpms <- rowSums(y)/sum(lib.size)*1e6
log2(cpms)

# The function works perfectly with prior.count or dispersion vectors:
aveLogCPM(y, prior.count=runif(nrow(y), 1, 5))
aveLogCPM(y, dispersion=runif(nrow(y), 0, 0.2))
```

---

binomTest

*Exact Binomial Tests for Comparing Two Digital Libraries*

---

**Description**

Computes  $p$ -values for differential abundance for each gene between two digital libraries, conditioning on the total count for each gene. The counts in each group as a proportion of the whole are assumed to follow a binomial distribution.

**Usage**

```
binomTest(y1, y2, n1=sum(y1), n2=sum(y2), p=n1/(n1+n2))
```

**Arguments**

|    |   |
|----|---|
| y1 | integer vector giving the count for each gene in the first library. Non-integer values are rounded to the nearest integer.                            |
| y2 | integer vector giving the count for each gene in the second library. Of same length as y1. Non-integer values are rounded to the nearest integer.     |
| n1 | total number of counts in the first library, across all genes. Non-integer values are rounded to the nearest integer. Not required if p is supplied.  |
| n2 | total number of counts in the second library, across all genes. Non-integer values are rounded to the nearest integer. Not required if p is supplied. |
| p  | expected proportion of y1 to the total for each gene under the null hypothesis.   |

**Details**

This function can be used to compare two libraries from SAGE, RNA-Seq, ChIP-Seq or other sequencing technologies with respect to technical variation.

An exact two-sided binomial test is computed for each gene. This test is closely related to Fisher's exact test for 2x2 contingency tables but, unlike Fisher's test, it conditions on the total number of counts for each gene. The null hypothesis is that the expected counts are in the same proportions as the library sizes, i.e., that the binomial probability for the first library is  $n1/(n1+n2)$ .

The two-sided rejection region is chosen analogously to Fisher's test. Specifically, the rejection region consists of those values with smallest probabilities under the null hypothesis.

When the counts are reasonably large, the binomial test, Fisher's test and Pearson's chisquare all give the same results. When the counts are smaller, the binomial test is usually to be preferred in this context.

This function replaces the earlier `sage.test` functions in the `statmod` and `sagenhaft` packages. It produces the same results as `binom.test` in the `stats` package, but is much faster.

**Value**

Numeric vector of p-values.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**References**

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Binomial\\_test](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Binomial_test)

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fisher's\\_exact\\_test](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fisher's_exact_test)

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Serial\\_analysis\\_of\\_gene\\_expression](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Serial_analysis_of_gene_expression)

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RNA-Seq>

**See Also**

[sage.test](#) (statmod package), [binom.test](#) (stats package)

**Examples**

```
binomTest(c(0,5,10),c(0,30,50),n1=10000,n2=15000)
# Univariate equivalents:
binom.test(5,5+30,p=10000/(10000+15000))$p.value
binom.test(10,10+50,p=10000/(10000+15000))$p.value
```

camera

*Competitive Gene Set Tests for Digital Gene Expression Data***Description**

Test whether a set of genes is highly ranked relative to other genes in terms of differential expression, accounting for inter-gene correlation.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
camera(y, index, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), weights = NULL,
       use.ranks = FALSE, allow.neg.cor=FALSE, inter.gene.cor=0.01, sort = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
camera(y, index, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), weights = NULL,
       use.ranks = FALSE, allow.neg.cor=FALSE, inter.gene.cor=0.01, sort = TRUE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGELRT'
cameraPR(statistic, index, use.ranks = FALSE, inter.gene.cor=0.01, sort = TRUE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>              | a <code>DGEList</code> object containing dispersion estimates or a <code>DGEGLM</code> object.  |
| <code>index</code>          | an index vector or a list of index vectors. Can be any vector such that <code>y[index, ]</code> selects the rows corresponding to the test set. The list can be made using <a href="#">ids2indices</a> .                                |
| <code>design</code>         | design matrix. Defaults to <code>y\$design</code> or, if that is <code>NULL</code> , to <code>model.matrix(~y\$samples\$group)</code> .   |
| <code>contrast</code>       | contrast of the linear model coefficients for which the test is required. Can be an integer specifying a column of <code>design</code> , or else a numeric vector of same length as the number of columns of <code>design</code> .      |
| <code>weights</code>        | numeric matrix of observation weights of same size as <code>y</code> , or a numeric vector of array weights with length equal to <code>ncol(y)</code> , or a numeric vector of gene weights with length equal to <code>nrow(y)</code> . |
| <code>use.ranks</code>      | do a rank-based test ( <code>TRUE</code> ) or a parametric test ( <code>FALSE</code> )?   |
| <code>allow.neg.cor</code>  | should reduced variance inflation factors be allowed for negative correlations?   |
| <code>inter.gene.cor</code> | numeric, optional preset value for the inter-gene correlation within tested sets. If <code>NA</code> or <code>NULL</code> , then an inter-gene correlation will be estimated for each tested set.                                       |
| <code>sort</code>           | logical, should the results be sorted by p-value?   |
| <code>statistic</code>      | a <code>DGELRT</code> object.   |
| <code>...</code>            | other arguments are not currently used  |

## Details

Camera is a competitive gene set test proposed by Wu and Smyth (2012) for microarray data and camera and implemented as an S3 generic function in the limma package. It is often used for gene set enrichment analyses (GSEA) together with a database of gene sets such as the MSigDB. Here we provide camera methods for DGEList and DGEGLM class objects. The negative binomial count data is converted to approximate normal deviates by computing mid-p quantile residuals (Dunn and Smyth, 1996; Routledge, 1994), under the null hypothesis that the contrast is zero, and the normal deviates are then passed to limma's camera function.

The cameraPR function is a variation of the camera method for pre-ranked differential expression statistics. We provide here a cameraPR method for DGELRT objects.

## Value

A data.frame giving the gene set results, with a row for each gene set defined by index. If sort=TRUE then results are sorted in decreasing order of significance. See [camera](#) for details.

## Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth

## References

- Dunn PK, Smyth GK (1996). Randomized quantile residuals. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 5, 236-244. doi:10.1080/10618600.1996.10474708 <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/residual.html>
- Routledge RD (1994). Practicing safe statistics with the mid-p. *Canadian Journal of Statistics* 22, 103-110.
- Wu D, Smyth GK (2012). Camera: a competitive gene set test accounting for inter-gene correlation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, e133. doi:10.1093/nar/gks461

## See Also

[camera](#).

## Examples

```
mu <- matrix(10, 100, 4)
group <- factor(c(0,0,1,1))
design <- model.matrix(~group)

# First set of 10 genes that are genuinely differentially expressed
iset1 <- 1:10
mu[iset1,3:4] <- mu[iset1,3:4]+10

# Second set of 10 genes are not DE
iset2 <- 11:20

# Generate counts and create a DGEList object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(100*4, mu=mu, size=10),100,4)
```

```

y <- DGEList(counts=y, group=group)

# Estimate dispersions
y <- estimateDisp(y, design)

# Gene set tests
camera(y, iset1, design)
camera(y, iset2, design)
camera(y, list(set1=iset1,set2=iset2), design)

# Alternative pre-ranked version
fit <- glmQLFit(y, design)
q <- glmQLFTest(fit)
cameraPR(q, list(set1=iset1,set2=iset2))

```

---

catchSalmon

*Process Salmon, kallisto or RSEM Transcript Output*


---

## Description

Read transcript counts from RSEM, kallisto or Salmon output for a series of biological samples and use bootstrap or posterior distribution samples to estimate the read-to-transcript-ambiguity for each transcript.

## Usage

```

catchSalmon(paths, verbose = TRUE)
catchKallisto(paths, verbose = TRUE)
catchRSEM(files = NULL, ngibbs = 100, verbose = TRUE)

```

## Arguments

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| paths   | character vector giving paths to the directories created by a pseudoaligner (either kallisto or Salmon). Each entry corresponds to one RNA-seq sample.  |
| verbose | logical. If TRUE, progress information will be sent to standard output as each sample is processed.   |
| files   | character vector specifying the isoforms.results files output by RSEM. Each entry corresponds to one RNA-seq sample. By default, all files in the current working directory with names ending in isoforms.results will be read. |
| ngibbs  | number of Gibbs samples used to generate the RSEM results files.  |

## Details

catchSalmon assumes that Salmon (Patro et al 2017; Zakeri et al 2017) has been run to estimate transcript counts for one or more RNA samples and that either bootstrap resamples or Gibbs posterior samples are included in the Salmon output. catchSalmon will automatically detect whether bootstrap or Gibbs samples are available. The number of technical resamples does not need to be



the same for each RNA sample, but the resamples should always be of the same type, either bootstrap or Gibbs. We recommend that at least 200 bootstrap or Gibbs resamples are generated in total across all the RNA samples (Baldoni et al 2024b).

catchKallisto assumes that kallisto (Bray et al 2016) has been run to estimate transcript counts for one or more RNA samples and that bootstrap samples have also been generated. The number of bootstrap resamples does not need to be the same for each RNA sample.

catchRSEM reads \*.isoforms.results files created by RSEM (Li and Dewey, 2011), which should contain means and standard deviations from Gibbs posterior samples as well as the estimated transcript counts. catchRSEM cannot detect the number of Gibbs samples performed for each RNA sample, so this must be specified via the ngibbs argument. The number of Gibbs samples is assumed to be the same for each RNA sample.

These functions read the transcript counts and use the technical (bootstrap or Gibbs) resamples to estimate an overdispersion parameter for each transcript. The overdispersion represents the variance inflation that occurs from ambiguity in assigning sequence reads to transcripts, a phenomenon that is called *read to transcript ambiguity* (RTA) overdispersion by Baldoni et al (2024ab). Transcripts that overlap other transcripts and have greater quantification uncertainty will have larger RTA overdispersions. The RTA overdispersions are greater than or equal to 1, with 1 representing no variance inflation.

To assess differential transcript expression, the transcript counts can be divided by the overdispersion parameters, after which the divided-counts can be input into standard differential expression pipelines designed for gene-level counts (Baldoni et al 2024a). The edgeR quasi pipeline has been found to perform well with the divided-counts (Baldoni et al 2024ab). The divided-counts behave much like negative binomial counts and show the same mean-variance trends as for gene-level RNA-seq counts. While bootstrap and Gibbs resamples both perform well, Baldoni et al (2024b) show that Gibbs resamples are computationally faster than bootstrap resamples and give slightly better performance in the downstream differential expression analyses.

## Value

A list containing components

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| counts               | matrix of transcript counts, with rows for transcripts and columns for RNA samples.  |
| annotation           | data.frame of transcript information with columns Length, EffectiveLength, and Overdispersion corresponding to transcript length, effective transcript length and RTA overdispersion respectively. |
| overdispersion.prior | median overdispersion, used to moderate the transcript-wise overdispersion values.   |
| resample.type        | character vector giving type of resampling ("bootstrap" or "gibbs") for each sample. Only for catchSalmon.   |

## Author(s)

Gordon Smyth and Pedro Baldoni

## References

- Baldoni PL, Chen Y, Hediyyeh-zadeh S, Liao Y, Dong X, Ritchie ME, Shi W, Smyth GK (2024a). Dividing out quantification uncertainty allows efficient assessment of differential transcript expression with edgeR. *Nucleic Acids Research* 52(3), e13. doi:10.1093/nar/gkad1167.
- Baldoni PL, Chen L, Smyth GK (2024b). Faster and more accurate assessment of differential transcript expression with Gibbs sampling and edgeR v4. *NAR Genomics and Bioinformatics* 6(4), lqae151. doi:10.1093/nargab/lqae151.
- Bray NL, Pimentel H, Melsted P, Pachter L (2016). Near-optimal probabilistic RNA-seq quantification. *Nature Biotechnology*, 34(5), 525-527.
- Li B, Dewey CN (2011). RSEM: accurate transcript quantification from RNA-Seq data with or without a reference genome. *BMC bioinformatics*, 12, 323.
- Patro R, Duggal G, Love MI, Irizarry RA, Kingsford C (2017). Salmon provides fast and bias-aware quantification of transcript expression. *Nature Methods*, 14(4), 417-419.
- Zakeri M, Srivastava A, Almodaresi F, Patro R (2017). Improved data-driven likelihood factorizations for transcript abundance estimation. *Bioinformatics* 33(14), i142-i151.

## Examples

```
## Not run:
# Read Salmon output and estimate overdispersion for each transcript
s <- catchSalmon(paths)

# Divide the transcript counts by the overdispersions ready for a standard edgeR DE analysis
dge <- DGEList(counts=s$counts/s$annotation$Overdispersion, genes=s$annotation)

## End(Not run)
```

---

cbind

*Combine DGEList Objects*


---

## Description

Combine a set of DGEList objects.

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
cbind(..., deparse.level=1)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
rbind(..., deparse.level=1)
```

## Arguments

... DGEList objects.

deparse.level not currently used, see [cbind](#) in the base package

**Details**

`cbind` combines data objects assuming the same genes in the same order but different samples. `rbind` combines data objects assuming equivalent samples, i.e., the same RNA targets, but different genes.

For `cbind`, the matrices of count data from the individual objects are cbinded. The data.frames of samples information, if they exist, are rbinded. The combined data object will preserve any additional components or attributes found in the first object to be combined. For `rbind`, the matrices of count data are rbinded while the sample information is unchanged.

**Value**

An `DGEList` object holding data from all samples and all genes from the individual objects.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

`cbind` in the base package.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
dge <- cbind(dge1, dge2, dge3)

## End(Not run)
```

---

commonCondLogLikDerDelta

*Conditional Log-Likelihoods in Terms of Delta*

---

**Description**

Common conditional log-likelihood parameterized in terms of delta ( $\phi / (\phi + 1)$ )

**Usage**

```
commonCondLogLikDerDelta(y, delta, der = 0)
```

**Arguments**

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>     | list with elements comprising the matrices of count data (or pseudocounts) for the different groups |
| <code>delta</code> | delta ( $\phi / (\phi + 1)$ ) parameter of negative binomial  |
| <code>der</code>   | derivative, either 0 (the function), 1 (first derivative) or 2 (second derivative)                  |

**Details**

The common conditional log-likelihood is constructed by summing over all of the individual gene-wise conditional log-likelihoods. The common conditional log-likelihood is taken as a function of the dispersion parameter ( $\phi$ ), and here parameterized in terms of  $\delta$  ( $\phi / (\phi + 1)$ ). The value of  $\delta$  that maximizes the common conditional log-likelihood is converted back to the  $\phi$  scale, and this value is the estimate of the common dispersion parameter used by all genes.

**Value**

numeric scalar of function/derivative evaluated at given  $\delta$

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy

**See Also**

[estimateCommonDisp](#) is the user-level function for estimating the common dispersion parameter.

**Examples**

```
counts<-matrix(rnbinom(20,size=1,mu=10),nrow=5)
d<-DGEList(counts=counts,group=rep(1:2,each=2),lib.size=rep(c(1000:1001),2))
y<-splitIntoGroups(d)
l11<-commonCondLogLikDerDelta(y,delta=0.5,der=0)
l12<-commonCondLogLikDerDelta(y,delta=0.5,der=1)
```

---

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| condLogLikDerSize | <i>Conditional Log-Likelihood of the Dispersion for a Single Group of Replicate Libraries</i> |
|-------------------|---|

---

**Description**

Derivatives of the negative-binomial log-likelihood with respect to the dispersion parameter for each gene, conditional on the mean count, for a single group of replicate libraries of the same size.

**Usage**

```
condLogLikDerSize(y, r, der=1L)
condLogLikDerDelta(y, delta, der=1L)
```

**Arguments**

|       |  |
|-------|--|
| y     | matrix of counts, all counts in each row having the same population mean                           |
| r     | numeric vector or scalar, size parameter of negative binomial distribution, equal to 1/dispersion  |
| delta | numeric vector or scalar, delta parameter of negative binomial, equal to dispersion/(1+dispersion) |

`der` integer specifying derivative required, either 0 (the function), 1 (first derivative) or 2 (second derivative)

### Details

The library sizes must be equalized before running this function. This function carries out the actual mathematical computations for the conditional log-likelihood and its derivatives, calculating the conditional log-likelihood for each gene. Derivatives are with respect to either the size (`r`) or the delta parametrization (`delta`) of the dispersion.

### Value

vector of row-wise derivatives with respect to `r` or `delta`

### Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

### Examples

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(10,size=1,mu=10),nrow=5)
condLogLikDerSize(y,r=1,der=1)
condLogLikDerDelta(y,delta=0.5,der=1)
```

---

cpm

*Counts per Million or Reads per Kilobase per Million*

---

### Description

Compute counts per million (CPM) or reads per kilobase per million (RPKM).

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
cpm(y, normalized.lib.sizes = TRUE,
     log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
cpm(y, normalized.lib.sizes = TRUE,
     log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
cpm(y, log = FALSE, shrunk = TRUE, ...)
## Default S3 method:
cpm(y, lib.size = NULL, offset=NULL,
     log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
rpkm(y, gene.length = NULL, normalized.lib.sizes = TRUE,
     log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
```

```

rpkm(y, gene.length = NULL, normalized.lib.sizes = TRUE,
      log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
rpkm(y, gene.length, log = FALSE, shrunk = TRUE, ...)
## Default S3 method:
rpkm(y, gene.length, lib.size = NULL, offset=NULL,
      log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
cpmByGroup(y, group = NULL, dispersion = NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
cpmByGroup(y, group = NULL, dispersion = NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
cpmByGroup(y, group = NULL, dispersion = 0.05,
            offset = NULL, weights = NULL, log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
rpkmByGroup(y, group = NULL, gene.length = NULL, dispersion = NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
rpkmByGroup(y, group = NULL, gene.length = NULL, dispersion = NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
rpkmByGroup(y, group = NULL, gene.length, dispersion = 0.05,
            offset = NULL, weights = NULL, log = FALSE, prior.count = 2, ...)

```

## Arguments

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <code>y</code>                    | a matrix-like object containing counts. Can be a numeric matrix, a <code>DGEList</code> object, a <code>SummarizedExperiment</code> object with a "counts" assay, or any object that can be coerced to a matrix by <code>as.matrix</code> . For <code>cpm</code> and <code>rpkm</code> , it can also be a <code>DGEGLM</code> or <code>DGELRT</code> object. |
| <code>normalized.lib.sizes</code> | logical, use normalized library sizes?   |
| <code>lib.size</code>             | library size, defaults to <code>colSums(y)</code> . Ignored if <code>offset</code> is specified.   |
| <code>offset</code>               | numeric matrix of same size as <code>y</code> , or a vector of length <code>ncol(y)</code> , representing library sizes on the log scale. Can also be a scalar for <code>cpmByGroup.default</code> and <code>rpkmByGroup.default</code> . If specified, then takes precedence over <code>lib.size</code> .   |
| <code>log</code>                  | logical, if <code>TRUE</code> then <code>log2</code> values are returned.  |
| <code>prior.count</code>          | average count to be added to each observation to avoid taking log of zero. Used only if <code>log=TRUE</code> .  |
| <code>shrunk</code>               | logical, if <code>TRUE</code> then the usual coefficients from the fitted object will be used, if <code>FALSE</code> then the unshrunk coefficients will be used.  |
| <code>gene.length</code>          | vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> giving gene length in bases, or the name of the column <code>y\$genes</code> containing the gene lengths.  |
| <code>group</code>                | factor giving group membership for columns of <code>y</code> . Defaults to <code>y\$sample\$group</code> for the <code>DGEList</code> method and to a single level factor for the default method.  |
| <code>dispersion</code>           | numeric vector of negative binomial dispersions.   |
| <code>weights</code>              | numeric vector or matrix of non-negative quantitative weights. Can be a vector of length equal to the number of libraries, or a matrix of the same size as <code>y</code> .  |
| <code>...</code>                  | other arguments are not used.  |

## Details

CPM or RPKM values are useful descriptive measures for the expression level of a gene. By default, the normalized library sizes are used in the computation for `DGEList` objects but simple column sums for matrices.

If log-values are computed, then a small count, given by `prior.count` but scaled to be proportional to the library size, is added to `y` to avoid taking the log of zero.

The `rpkM` methods for `DGEList`, `DGEGLM` or `DGELRT` objects will try to find the gene lengths in a column of `y$genes` called `Length` or `length`. Failing that, it will look for any column name containing "length" in any capitalization.

The `cpm` and `rpkM` methods for `DGEGLM` and `DGELRT` fitted model objects return fitted CPM or RPKM values. If `shrunk=TRUE`, then the CPM or RPKM values will reflect the `prior.count` input to the original linear model fit. If `shrunk=FALSE`, then the CPM or RPKM values will be computed with `prior.count=0`. Note that the latter could result in taking the log of near-zero values if `log=TRUE`.

`cpmByGroup` and `rpkMByGroup` compute group average values on the unlogged scale.

## Value

A numeric matrix of CPM or RPKM values, on the log2 scale if `log=TRUE`. `cpm` and `rpkM` produce matrices of the same size as `y`. If `y` was a data object, then observed values are returned. If `y` was a fitted model object, then fitted values are returned.

`cpmByGroup` and `rpkMByGroup` produce matrices with a column for each level of group.

## Note

`aveLogCPM(y)`, `rowMeans(cpm(y, log=TRUE))` and `log2(rowMeans(cpm(y)))` all give slightly different results.

## Author(s)

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen, Aaron Lun

## See Also

[aveLogCPM](#)

## Examples

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(20,size=1,mu=10),5,4)
cpm(y)

d <- DGEList(counts=y, lib.size=1001:1004)
cpm(d)
cpm(d,log=TRUE)

d$genes <- data.frame(Length=c(1000,2000,500,1500,3000))
rpkM(d)

cpmByGroup(d, group=c(1,1,2,2))
```

```
rpkMByGroup(d, group=c(1,1,2,2))
```

---

**cutWithMinN***Cut Numeric Vector Into Non-empty Intervals*

---

**Description**

Discretizes a numeric vector. Divides the range of `x` into intervals, so that each interval contains a minimum number of values, and codes the values in `x` according to which interval they fall into.

**Usage**

```
cutWithMinN(x, intervals=2, min.n=1)
```

**Arguments**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>x</code>         | numeric vector.  |
| <code>intervals</code> | number of intervals required.  |
| <code>min.n</code>     | minimum number of values in any interval. Must be less than or equal to <code>length(x)/intervals</code> . |

**Details**

This function strikes a compromise between the base functions `cut`, which by default cuts a vector into equal length intervals, and `quantile`, which is suited to finding equally populated intervals. It finds a partition of the `x` values that is as close as possible to equal length intervals while keeping at least `min.n` values in each interval.

Tied values of `x` are broken by random jittering, so the partition may vary slightly from run to run if there are many tied values.

**Value**

A list with components:

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>group</code>  | integer vector of same length as <code>x</code> indicating which interval each value belongs to.     |
| <code>breaks</code> | numeric vector of length <code>intervals+1</code> giving the left and right limits of each interval. |

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[cut](#), [quantile](#).



**Examples**

```
x <- c(1,2,3,4,5,6,7,100)
cutWithMinN(x,intervals=3,min.n=1)
```

decideTests

*Multiple Testing Across Genes and Contrasts***Description**

Identify which genes are significantly differentially expressed from an edgeR test object containing p-values and test statistics.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGELRT'
decideTests(object, adjust.method="BH", p.value=0.05, lfc=0, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| object        | an object of class DGEEexact, DGELRT or glmQLFTest from which p-values and log-fold-changes can be extracted.  |
| adjust.method | character string specifying p-value adjustment method. Possible values are "none", "BH", "fdr", "BY" and "holm". See <a href="#">p.adjust</a> for details. |
| p.value       | numeric value between 0 and 1 giving the required family-wise error or false discovery rate.   |
| lfc           | numeric, minimum absolute log2-fold-change required.   |
| ...           | other arguments are not used.  |

**Details**

This function applies a multiple testing procedure and significance level cutoff to the genewise tests contained in an edgeR test object and collates the results in a data.frame table.

The function can apply optionally apply a logFC cutoff and well as a p-value or FDR cutoff (although logFCs cutoff are not recommended, see note below). If the statistical tests are on 1 degree of freedom, then the logFC cutoff is applied to the absolute coefficient or contrast. If the statistical tests are on more than 1 degree of freedom, then the logFC cutoff will be satisfied if any of the coefficients or contrasts that define the test are greater than the cutoff.

**Value**

An object of class [TestResults](#). This is essentially a single-column integer matrix with elements -1, 0 or 1 indicating whether each gene is classified as significantly down-regulated, not significant or significant up-regulated for the comparison contained in object. To be considered significant, genes need to have adjusted p-value below p.value and log2-fold-change greater than lfc.

If object contains F-tests or LRTs for multiple contrasts, then the genes are simply classified as significant (1) or not significant. In this case, the log2-fold-change threshold lfc has to be achieved by at least one of the contrasts for a gene to be significant.

**Note**

Although this function enables users to set p-value and logFC cutoffs simultaneously, this combination criterion is not recommended. logFC cutoffs tend to favor low expressed genes and thereby reduce rather than increase biological significance. Unless the fold changes and p-values are very highly correlated, the addition of a fold change cutoff can also increase the family-wise error rate or false discovery rate above the nominal level. Users wanting to use fold change thresholding should consider using `glmTreat` instead and leaving `lfc` at the default value when using `decideTests`.

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth and the edgeR team

**See Also**

[decideTests](#) and [TestResults](#) in the limma package.

**Examples**

```
ngenes <- 100
x1 <- rnorm(6)
x2 <- rnorm(6)
design <- cbind(Intercept=1,x1,x2)
beta <- matrix(0,ngenes,3)
beta[,1] <- 4
beta[1:20,2] <- rnorm(20)
mu <- 2^(beta %*% t(design))
y <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*6,mu=mu,size=10),ngenes,6)
fit <- glmFit(y,design,dispersion=0.1)
lrt <- glmLRT(fit,coef=2:3)
res <- decideTests(lrt,p.value=0.1)
summary(res)
lrt <- glmLRT(fit,coef=2)
res <- decideTests(lrt,p.value=0.1)
summary(res)
```

---

DGEEexact-class

*differential expression of Digital Gene Expression data - class*

---

**Description**

A list-based S4 class for for storing results of a differential expression analysis for DGE data.

**List Components**

For objects of this class, rows correspond to genomic features and columns to statistics associated with the differential expression analysis. The genomic features are called genes, but in reality might correspond to transcripts, tags, exons etc.

Objects of this class contain the following list components:

**table:** data frame containing columns for the log<sub>2</sub>-fold-change, logFC, the average log<sub>2</sub>-counts-per-million, logCPM, and the two-sided p-value PValue.

**comparison:** vector giving the two experimental groups/conditions being compared.

**genes:** a data frame containing information about each gene (can be NULL).

## Methods

This class inherits directly from class `list`, so `DGEEExact` objects can be manipulated as if they were ordinary lists. However they can also be treated as if they were matrices for the purposes of subsetting.

The dimensions, row names and column names of a `DGEEExact` object are defined by those of `table`, see `dim.DGEEExact` or `dimnames.DGEEExact`.

`DGEEExact` objects can be subsetted, see `subsetting`.

`DGEEExact` objects also have a `show` method so that printing produces a compact summary of their contents.

## Author(s)

edgeR team. First created by Mark Robinson and Davis McCarthy

## See Also

Other classes defined in edgeR are [DGEList-class](#), [DGEGLM-class](#), [DGELRT-class](#), [TopTags-class](#)

---

DGEGLM-class

*Digital Gene Expression Generalized Linear Model results - class*

---

## Description

A list-based S4 class for storing results of a GLM fit to each gene in a DGE dataset.

## List Components

For objects of this class, rows correspond to genomic features and columns to coefficients in the linear model. The genomic features are called `gene`, but in reality might correspond to transcripts, tags, exons, etc.

Objects of this class contain the following list components:

**coefficients:** matrix containing the coefficients computed from fitting the model defined by the design matrix to each gene in the dataset. Coefficients are on the natural log scale.

**df.residual:** vector containing the residual degrees of freedom for the model fit to each gene in the dataset.

**deviance:** vector giving the deviance from the model fit to each gene.

**design:** design matrix for the full model from the likelihood ratio test.

**offset:** scalar, vector or matrix of offset values to be included in the GLMs for each gene.

**samples:** data frame containing information about the samples comprising the dataset.

**genes:** data frame containing information about the tags for which we have DGE data (can be NULL if there is no information available).

**dispersion:** scalar or vector providing the value of the dispersion parameter used in the negative binomial GLM for each gene.

**lib.size:** vector providing the effective library size for each sample in the dataset.

**weights:** matrix of weights used in the GLM fitting for each gene.

**fitted.values:** the fitted (expected) values from the GLM for each gene.

**AveLogCPM:** numeric vector giving average log<sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene.

## Methods

This class inherits directly from class `list` so any operation appropriate for lists will work on objects of this class.

The dimensions, row names and column names of a `DGEGLM` object are defined by those of the dataset, see `dim.DGEGLM` or `dimnames.DGEGLM`.

`DGEGLM` objects can be subsetted, see [subsetting](#).

`DGEGLM` objects also have a `show` method so that printing produces a compact summary of their contents.

## Author(s)

edgeR team. First created by Davis McCarthy.

## See Also

Other classes defined in edgeR are [DGEList-class](#), [DGEEexact-class](#), [DGELRT-class](#), [TopTags-class](#)

---

DGEList

*Create a DGEList object*

---

## Description

Assembles a `DGEList` object from its components, especially the table counts as a matrix or `data.frame`.

## Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
DGEList(counts, lib.size = NULL, norm.factors = NULL,
         samples = NULL, group = NULL, genes = NULL,
         remove.zeros = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'data.frame'
DGEList(counts, lib.size = NULL, norm.factors = NULL,
         samples = NULL, group = NULL, genes = NULL,
         remove.zeros = FALSE, annotation.columns = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>counts</code>             | numeric matrix or <code>data.frame</code> containing sequence read counts, with rows corresponding to genes (genomic features) and columns to samples. Negative values or NAs are not allowed.             |
| <code>lib.size</code>           | numeric vector of library sizes (sequencing depths) for the samples. Defaults to <code>colSums(counts)</code> .  |
| <code>norm.factors</code>       | numeric vector of normalization factors that modify the library sizes. Defaults to a vector of ones.   |
| <code>samples</code>            | <code>data.frame</code> containing sample information, with a row for each sample. This <code>data.frame</code> will be appended to the <code>samples</code> component of the <code>DGEList</code> object. |
| <code>group</code>              | vector or factor giving the experimental group or treatment condition for each sample. Defaults to a single group.   |
| <code>genes</code>              | <code>data.frame</code> containing gene annotation.  |
| <code>remove.zeros</code>       | logical, whether to remove rows that have 0 total count.   |
| <code>annotation.columns</code> | specify columns of counts that contain gene annotation rather than counts. Can be a vector of column numbers, or a vector of column names, or a logical vector.  |
| <code>...</code>                | other arguments are not currently used.  |

**Details**

Assembles a `DGEList` object from its components. The only compulsory argument is the table of counts.

Normally, `counts` is a numeric matrix of counts but a `data.frame` is also allowed. If the `counts` is a `data.frame`, then the columns of the `data.frame` containing gene IDs or other gene annotation can be specified by `annotation.columns`, and the other columns are assumed to contain sequence read counts. If `annotation.columns` is not specified, then the function will check for non-numeric columns of counts and will attempt to set the leading columns up to the last non-numeric column as annotation.

**Value**

A `DGEList` object.

**Author(s)**

edgeR team. Originally created by Mark Robinson.

**See Also**

[DGEList-class](#)

**Examples**

```

ngenes <- 100
nsamples <- 4
Counts <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nsamples,mu=5,size=10),ngenes,nsamples)
rownames(Counts) <- 1:ngenes
colnames(Counts) <- paste0("S",1:4)
Group <- gl(2,2)
Genes <- data.frame(Symbol=paste0("Gene",1:ngenes))
y <- DGEList(counts=Counts, group=Group, genes=Genes)
dim(y)
colnames(y)
y$samples
show(y)

```

---

 DGEList-class

*Digital Gene Expression data - class*


---

**Description**

A list-based S4 class for storing read counts and associated information from digital gene expression or sequencing technologies.

**List Components**

For objects of this class, rows correspond to genomic features and columns to samples. The genomic features are called genes, but in reality might correspond to transcripts, tags, exons etc. Objects of this class contain the following essential list components:

**counts:** numeric matrix of read counts, one row for each gene and one column for each sample.

**samples:** data.frame with a row for each sample and columns `group`, `lib.size` and `norm.factors` containing the group labels, library sizes and normalization factors. Other columns can be optionally added to give more detailed sample information.

Optional components include:

**genes:** data.frame giving annotation information for each gene. Same number of rows as counts.

**AveLogCPM:** numeric vector giving average log<sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene.

**common.dispersion:** numeric scalar giving the overall dispersion estimate.

**trended.dispersion:** numeric vector giving trended dispersion estimates for each gene.

**tagwise.dispersion:** numeric vector giving tagwise dispersion estimates for each gene (note that 'tag' and 'gene' are synonymous here).

**offset:** numeric matrix of same size as counts giving offsets for use in log-linear models.

**Methods**

This class inherits directly from class `list`, so `DGEList` objects can be manipulated as if they were ordinary lists. However they can also be treated as if they were matrices for the purposes of subsetting.

The dimensions, row names and column names of a `DGEList` object are defined by those of counts, see `dim.DGEList` or `dimnames.DGEList`.

`DGEList` objects can be subsetted, see `subsetting`.

`DGEList` objects also have a `show` method so that printing produces a compact summary of their contents.

**Author(s)**

edgeR team. First created by Mark Robinson.

**See Also**

`DGEList` constructs `DGEList` objects. Other classes defined in edgeR are `DGEEexact-class`, `DGEGLM-class`, `DGELRT-class`, `TopTags-class`

---

DGELRT-class

*Digital Gene Expression Likelihood Ratio Test data and results - class*

---

**Description**

A list-based S4 class for storing results of a GLM-based differential expression analysis for DGE data.

**List Components**

For objects of this class, rows correspond to genomic features and columns to statistics associated with the differential expression analysis. The genomic features are called genes, but in reality might correspond to transcripts, tags, exons etc.

Objects of this class contain the following list components:

`table`: data frame containing the log-concentration (i.e. expression level), the log-fold change in expression between the two groups/conditions and the exact p-value for differential expression, for each gene.

`coefficients.full`: matrix containing the coefficients computed from fitting the full model (fit using `glmFit` and a given design matrix) to each gene in the dataset.

`coefficients.null`: matrix containing the coefficients computed from fitting the null model to each gene in the dataset. The null model is the model to which the full model is compared, and is fit using `glmFit` and dropping selected column(s) (i.e. coefficient(s)) from the design matrix for the full model.

`design`: design matrix for the full model from the likelihood ratio test.

`...`: if the argument `y` to `glmLRT` (which produces the `DGELRT` object) was itself a `DGEList` object, then the `DGELRT` will contain all of the elements of `y`, except for the table of counts and the table of pseudocounts.

## Methods

This class inherits directly from class `list`, so DGELRT objects can be manipulated as if they were ordinary lists. However they can also be treated as if they were matrices for the purposes of subsetting.

The dimensions, row names and column names of a DGELRT object are defined by those of `table`, see `dim.DGELRT` or `dimnames.DGELRT`.

DGELRT objects can be subsetted, see [subsetting](#).

DGELRT objects also have a `show` method so that printing produces a compact summary of their contents.

## Author(s)

edgeR team. First created by Davis McCarthy

## See Also

Other classes defined in edgeR are [DGEList-class](#), [DGEExact-class](#), [DGEGLM-class](#), [TopTags-class](#)

---

diffSpliceDGE

*Test for Differential Exon Usage*

---

## Description

Given a negative binomial generalized log-linear model fit at the exon level, test for differential exon usage between experimental conditions.

## Usage

```
diffSpliceDGE(glmfit, coef=ncol(glmfit$design), contrast=NULL, geneid, exonid=NULL,
              prior.count=0.125, robust=NULL, verbose=TRUE)
```

## Arguments

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>glmfit</code>   | an DGEGLM fitted model object produced by <code>glmFit</code> or <code>glmQLFit</code> . Rows should correspond to exons.  |
| <code>coef</code>     | integer indicating which coefficient of the generalized linear model is to be tested for differential exon usage. Defaults to the last coefficient.  |
| <code>contrast</code> | numeric vector specifying the contrast of the linear model coefficients to be tested for differential exon usage. Length must equal to the number of columns of design. If specified, then takes precedence over <code>coef</code> . |
| <code>geneid</code>   | gene identifiers. Either a vector of length <code>nrow(glmfit)</code> or the name of the column of <code>glmfit\$genes</code> containing the gene identifiers. Rows with the same ID are assumed to belong to the same gene.         |
| <code>exonid</code>   | exon identifiers. Either a vector of length <code>nrow(glmfit)</code> or the name of the column of <code>glmfit\$genes</code> containing the exon identifiers.   |



|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| robust      | logical, should the estimation of the empirical Bayes prior parameters be robustified against outlier sample? If NULL will be extracted from <code>glmfit</code> . |
| prior.count | average prior count to be added to observation to shrink the estimated log-fold-changes towards zero.  |
| verbose     | logical, if TRUE some diagnostic information about the number of genes and exons is output.  |

## Details

This function tests for differential exon usage for each gene for a given coefficient of the generalized linear model.

Testing for differential exon usage is equivalent to testing whether the exons in each gene have the same log-fold-changes as the other exons in the same gene. At exon-level, the log-fold-change of each exon is compared to the log-fold-change of the entire gene which contains that exon. At gene-level, two different tests are provided. One is converting exon-level p-values to gene-level p-values by the Simes method. The other is using exon-level test statistics to conduct gene-level tests.

## Value

`diffSpliceDGE` produces an object of class `DGELRT` containing the component design from `glmfit` plus the following new components:

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| comparison         | character string describing the coefficient being tested.  |
| coefficients       | numeric vector of coefficients on the natural log scale. Each coefficient is the difference between the log-fold-change for that exon versus the log-fold-change for the entire gene which contains that exon. |
| genes              | data.frame of exon annotation.   |
| genecolname        | character string giving the name of the column of genes containing gene IDs.   |
| exoncolname        | character string giving the name of the column of genes containing exon IDs.   |
| exon.df.test       | numeric vector of testing degrees of freedom for exons.  |
| exon.p.value       | numeric vector of p-values for exons.  |
| gene.df.test       | numeric vector of testing degrees of freedom for genes.  |
| gene.p.value       | numeric vector of gene-level testing p-values.   |
| gene.Simes.p.value | numeric vector of Simes' p-values for genes.   |
| gene.genes         | data.frame of gene annotation.   |

Some components of the output depend on whether `glmfit` is produced by `glmFit` or `glmQLFit`. If `glmfit` is produced by `glmFit`, then the following components are returned in the output object:

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| exon.LR | numeric vector of LR-statistics for exons.           |
| gene.LR | numeric vector of LR-statistics for gene-level test. |

If `glmfit` is produced by `glmQLFit`, then the following components are returned in the output object:

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| exon.F | numeric vector of F-statistics for exons. |
|--------|---|

gene.df.prior    numeric vector of prior degrees of freedom for genes.  
 gene.df.residual  
                   numeric vector of residual degrees of freedom for genes.  
 gene.F            numeric vector of F-statistics for gene-level test.

The information and testing results for both exons and genes are sorted by geneid and by exonid within gene.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Lizhong Chen and Gordon Smyth

### Examples

```
# Gene exon annotation
Gene <- paste("Gene", 1:100, sep="")
Gene <- rep(Gene, each=10)
Exon <- paste("Ex", 1:10, sep="")
Gene.Exon <- paste(Gene, Exon, sep=".")
genes <- data.frame(GeneID=Gene, Gene.Exon=Gene.Exon)

group <- factor(rep(1:2, each=3))
design <- model.matrix(~group)
mu <- matrix(100, nrow=1000, ncol=6)
# knock-out the first exon of Gene1 by 90%
mu[1,4:6] <- 10
# generate exon counts
counts <- matrix(rnbinom(6000,mu=mu,size=20),1000,6)

y <- DGEList(counts=counts, lib.size=rep(1e6,6), genes=genes)
gfit <- glmFit(y, design, dispersion=0.05)

ds <- diffSpliceDGE(gfit, geneid="GeneID")
topSpliceDGE(ds)
plotSpliceDGE(ds)
```

---

dim                                    *Retrieve the Dimensions of a DGEList, DGEExact, DGEGLM, DGELRT or TopTags Object*

---

### Description

Retrieve the number of rows (genes) and columns (libraries) for an DGEList, DGEExact or TopTags Object.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
dim(x)
```

**Arguments**

x an object of class DGEList, DGEEExact, TopTags, DGEGLM or DGELRT

**Details**

Digital gene expression data objects share many analogies with ordinary matrices in which the rows correspond to genes and the columns to arrays. These methods allow one to extract the size of microarray data objects in the same way that one would do for ordinary matrices.

A consequence is that row and column commands `nrow(x)`, `ncol(x)` and so on also work.

**Value**

Numeric vector of length 2. The first element is the number of rows (genes) and the second is the number of columns (libraries).

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth, Davis McCarthy

**See Also**

[dim](#) in the base package.

[02.Classes](#) gives an overview of data classes used in LIMMA.

**Examples**

```
M <- A <- matrix(11:14,4,2)
rownames(M) <- rownames(A) <- c("a","b","c","d")
colnames(M) <- colnames(A) <- c("A1","A2")
MA <- new("MAList",list(M=M,A=A))
dim(M)
ncol(M)
nrow(M)
```

---

dimnames

*Retrieve the Dimension Names of a DGE Object*

---

**Description**

Retrieve the dimension names of a digital gene expression data object.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
dimnames(x)
## S3 replacement method for class 'DGEList'
dimnames(x) <- value
```

**Arguments**

x an object of class DGEList, DGEEExact, DGEGLM, DGELRT or TopTags  
 value a possible value for dimnames(x), see [dimnames](#)

**Details**

The dimension names of a DGE data object are the same as those of the most important component of that object.

Setting dimension names is currently only permitted for DGEList or DGEGLM objects.

A consequence of these methods is that rownames, colnames, rownames<- and colnames<- will also work as expected on any of the above object classes.

**Value**

Either NULL or a list of length 2. If a list, its components are either NULL or a character vector the length of the appropriate dimension of x.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[dimnames](#) in the base package.

---

 dispBinTrend

---

*Estimate Dispersion Trend by Binning for NB GLMs*


---

**Description**

Estimate the abundance-dispersion trend by computing the common dispersion for bins of genes of similar AveLogCPM and then fitting a smooth curve.

**Usage**

```
dispBinTrend(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL, df = 5, span=0.3, min.n=400,
             method.bin="CoxReid", method.trend="spline", AveLogCPM=NULL,
             weights=NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

y numeric matrix of counts  
 design numeric matrix giving the design matrix for the GLM that is to be fit.

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| offset       | numeric scalar, vector or matrix giving the offset (in addition to the log of the effective library size) that is to be included in the NB GLM for the genes. If a scalar, then this value will be used as an offset for all genes and libraries. If a vector, it should be have length equal to the number of libraries, and the same vector of offsets will be used for each gene. If a matrix, then each library for each gene can have a unique offset, if desired. In <code>adjustedProfileLik</code> the offset must be a matrix with the same dimension as the table of counts. |
| df           | degrees of freedom for spline curve.   |
| span         | span used for loess curve.   |
| min.n        | minimim number of genes in a bins.   |
| method.bin   | method used to estimate the dispersion in each bin. Possible values are "CoxReid", "Pearson" or "deviance".  |
| method.trend | type of curve to smooth the bins. Possible values are "spline" for a natural cubic regression spline or "loess" for a linear lowess curve.   |
| AveLogCPM    | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene  |
| weights      | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights   |
| ...          | other arguments are passed to <code>estimateGLMCommonDisp</code>   |

### Details

Estimate a dispersion parameter for each of many negative binomial generalized linear models by computing the common dispersion for genes sorted into bins based on overall AveLogCPM. A regression natural cubic splines or a linear loess curve is used to smooth the trend and extrapolate a value to each gene.

If there are fewer than `min.n` rows of `y` with at least one positive count, then one bin is used. The number of bins is limited to 1000.

### Value

list with the following components:

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| AveLogCPM      | numeric vector containing the overall AveLogCPM for each gene  |
| dispersion     | numeric vector giving the trended dispersion estimate for each gene                                      |
| bin.AveLogCPM  | numeric vector of length equal to <code>nbins</code> giving the average (mean) AveLogCPM for each bin    |
| bin.dispersion | numeric vector of length equal to <code>nbins</code> giving the estimated common dispersion for each bin |

### Author(s)

Davis McCarthy and Gordon Smyth

### References

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

**See Also**

[estimateGLMTrendedDisp](#)

**Examples**

```
ngenes <- 1000
nlibs <- 4
means <- seq(5,10000,length.out=ngenes)
y <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs,mu=rep(means,nlibs),size=0.1*means),nrow=ngenes,ncol=nlibs)
keep <- rowSums(y) > 0
y <- y[keep,]
group <- factor(c(1,1,2,2))
design <- model.matrix(~group) # Define the design matrix for the full model
out <- dispBinTrend(y, design, min.n=100, span=0.3)
with(out, plot(AveLogCPM, sqrt(dispersion)))
```

---

dispCoxReid

*Estimate Common Dispersion for Negative Binomial GLMs*

---

**Description**

Estimate a common dispersion parameter across multiple negative binomial generalized linear models.

**Usage**

```
dispCoxReid(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL, weights=NULL, AveLogCPM=NULL, interval=c(0,4),
            tol=1e-5, min.row.sum=5, subset=10000)
dispDeviance(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL, interval=c(0,4), tol=1e-5, min.row.sum=5,
             subset=10000, AveLogCPM=NULL, robust=FALSE, trace=FALSE)
dispPearson(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL, min.row.sum=5, subset=10000,
            AveLogCPM=NULL, tol=1e-6, trace=FALSE, initial.dispersion=0.1)
```

**Arguments**

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>           | numeric matrix of counts. A glm is fitted to each row.  |
| <code>design</code>      | numeric design matrix, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> .  |
| <code>offset</code>      | numeric vector or matrix of offsets for the log-linear models, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> . Defaults to <code>log(colSums(y))</code> . |
| <code>weights</code>     | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights  |
| <code>AveLogCPM</code>   | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million.  |
| <code>interval</code>    | numeric vector of length 2 giving minimum and maximum allowable values for the dispersion, passed to optimize.                            |
| <code>tol</code>         | the desired accuracy, see <code>optimize</code> or <code>uniroot</code> .   |
| <code>min.row.sum</code> | integer. Only rows with at least this number of counts are used.  |

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| subset             | integer, number of rows to use in the calculation. Rows used are chosen evenly spaced by AveLogCPM. |
| trace              | logical, should iteration information be output?  |
| robust             | logical, should a robust estimator be used?   |
| initial.dispersion | starting value for the dispersion   |

## Details

These are low-level (non-object-orientated) functions called by estimateGLMCommonDisp.

dispCoxReid maximizes the Cox-Reid adjusted profile likelihood (Cox and Reid, 1987). dispPearson sets the average Pearson goodness of fit statistics to its (asymptotic) expected value. This is also known as the *pseudo-likelihood* estimator. dispDeviance sets the average residual deviance statistic to its (asymptotic) expected values. This is also known as the *quasi-likelihood* estimator.

Robinson and Smyth (2008) and McCarthy et al (2011) showed that the Pearson (pseudo-likelihood) estimator typically under-estimates the true dispersion. It can be seriously biased when the number of libraries (ncol(y) is small. On the other hand, the deviance (quasi-likelihood) estimator typically over-estimates the true dispersion when the number of libraries is small. Robinson and Smyth (2008) and McCarthy et al (2011) showed the Cox-Reid estimator to be the least biased of the three options.

dispCoxReid uses optimize to maximize the adjusted profile likelihood. dispDeviance uses uniroot to solve the estimating equation. The robust options use an order statistic instead the mean statistic, and have the effect that a minority of genes with very large (outlier) dispersions should have limited influence on the estimated value. dispPearson uses a globally convergent Newton iteration.

## Value

Numeric vector of length one giving the estimated common dispersion.

## Author(s)

Gordon Smyth

## References

Cox, DR, and Reid, N (1987). Parameter orthogonality and approximate conditional inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* 49, 1-39.

Robinson MD and Smyth GK (2008). Small-sample estimation of negative binomial dispersion, with applications to SAGE data. *Biostatistics*, 9, 321-332

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research*. <http://nar.oxfordjournals.org/content/early/2012/02/06/nar.gks042> (Published online 28 January 2012)

## See Also

[estimateGLMCommonDisp](#), [optimize](#), [uniroot](#)

**Examples**

```

ngenes <- 100
nlibs <- 4
y <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs,mu=10,size=10),nrow=ngenes,ncol=nlibs)
group <- factor(c(1,1,2,2))
lib.size <- rowSums(y)
design <- model.matrix(~group)
disp <- dispCoxReid(y, design, offset=log(lib.size), subset=100)

```

---

dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise

*Estimate Genewise Dispersion for Negative Binomial GLMs by Cox-Reid Adjusted Profile Likelihood*

---

**Description**

Estimate genewise dispersion parameters across multiple negative binomial generalized linear models using weighted Cox-Reid Adjusted Profile-likelihood and cubic spline interpolation over a genewise grid.

**Usage**

```

dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise(y, design, offset=NULL, dispersion, trend=TRUE,
                              AveLogCPM=NULL, min.row.sum=5, prior.df=10,
                              span=0.3, grid.npts=11, grid.range=c(-6,6),
                              weights=NULL)

```

**Arguments**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| y           | numeric matrix of counts   |
| design      | numeric matrix giving the design matrix for the GLM that is to be fit.   |
| offset      | numeric scalar, vector or matrix giving the offset (in addition to the log of the effective library size) that is to be included in the NB GLM for the genes. If a scalar, then this value will be used as an offset for all genes and libraries. If a vector, it should be have length equal to the number of libraries, and the same vector of offsets will be used for each gene. If a matrix, then each library for each gene can have a unique offset, if desired. In <code>adjustedProfileLik</code> the offset must be a matrix with the same dimension as the table of counts. |
| dispersion  | numeric scalar or vector giving the dispersion(s) towards which the genewise dispersion parameters are shrunk.   |
| trend       | logical, whether abundance-dispersion trend is used for smoothing.   |
| AveLogCPM   | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene.   |
| min.row.sum | numeric scalar giving a value for the filtering out of low abundance genes. Only genes with total sum of counts above this value are used. Low abundance genes can adversely affect the estimation of the common dispersion, so this argument allows the user to select an appropriate filter threshold for the gene abundance.  |



|            |   |
|------------|---|
| prior.df   | numeric scalar, prior degsmoothing parameter that indicates the weight to give to the common likelihood compared to the individual gene's likelihood; default <code>getPriorN(object)</code> gives a value for <code>prior.n</code> that is equivalent to giving the common likelihood 20 prior degrees of freedom in the estimation of the gene-wise dispersion. |
| span       | numeric parameter between 0 and 1 specifying proportion of data to be used in the local regression moving window. Larger numbers give smoother fits.  |
| grid.npts  | numeric scalar, the number of points at which to place knots for the spline-based estimation of the gene-wise dispersion estimates.   |
| grid.range | numeric vector of length 2, giving relative range, in terms of $\log_2(\text{dispersion})$ , on either side of trendline for each gene for spline grid points.  |
| weights    | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights  |

### Details

In the edgeR context, `dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise` is a low-level function called by `estimateGLMTagwiseDisp`. `dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise` calls the function `maximizeInterpolant` to fit cubic spline interpolation over a gene-wise grid.

Note that the terms 'tag' and 'gene' are synonymous here. The function is only named 'Tagwise' for historical reasons.

### Value

`dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise` produces a vector of gene-wise dispersions having the same length as the number of genes in the count data.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth

### References

Cox, DR, and Reid, N (1987). Parameter orthogonality and approximate conditional inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* 49, 1-39.

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

### See Also

[estimateGLMTagwiseDisp](#), [maximizeInterpolant](#)

### Examples

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(1000, mu=10, size=2), ncol=4)
design <- matrix(1, 4, 1)
dispersion <- 0.5
d <- dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise(y, design, dispersion=dispersion)
d
```

---

 dispCoxReidSplineTrend

*Estimate Dispersion Trend for Negative Binomial GLMs*


---

## Description

Estimate trended dispersion parameters across multiple negative binomial generalized linear models using Cox-Reid adjusted profile likelihood.

## Usage

```
dispCoxReidSplineTrend(y, design, offset=NULL, df = 5, subset=10000, AveLogCPM=NULL,
                      method.optim="Nelder-Mead", trace=0)
dispCoxReidPowerTrend(y, design, offset=NULL, subset=10000, AveLogCPM=NULL,
                      method.optim="Nelder-Mead", trace=0)
```

## Arguments

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| y            | numeric matrix of counts   |
| design       | numeric matrix giving the design matrix for the GLM that is to be fit.   |
| offset       | numeric scalar, vector or matrix giving the offset (in addition to the log of the effective library size) that is to be included in the NB GLM for the genes. If a scalar, then this value will be used as an offset for all genes and libraries. If a vector, it should be have length equal to the number of libraries, and the same vector of offsets will be used for each gene. If a matrix, then each library for each gene can have a unique offset, if desired. In <code>adjustedProfileLik</code> the offset must be a matrix with the same dimension as the table of counts. |
| df           | integer giving the degrees of freedom of the spline function, see <code>ns</code> in the <code>splines</code> package.   |
| subset       | integer, number of rows to use in the calculation. Rows used are chosen evenly spaced by <code>AveLogCPM</code> using <code>cutWithMinN</code> .   |
| AveLogCPM    | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene.   |
| method.optim | the method to be used in <code>optim</code> . See <code>optim</code> for more detail.  |
| trace        | logical, should iteration information be output?   |

## Details

In the edgeR context, these are low-level functions called by `estimateGLMTrendedDisp`.

`dispCoxReidSplineTrend` and `dispCoxReidPowerTrend` fit abundance trends to the genewise dispersions. `dispCoxReidSplineTrend` fits a regression spline whereas `dispCoxReidPowerTrend` fits a log-linear trend of the form  $a \cdot \exp(\text{abundance})^b + c$ . In either case, `optim` is used to maximize the adjusted profile likelihood (Cox and Reid, 1987).

**Value**

List containing numeric vectors dispersion and abundance containing the estimated dispersion and abundance for each gene. The vectors are of the same length as nrow(y).

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

**References**

Cox, DR, and Reid, N (1987). Parameter orthogonality and approximate conditional inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* 49, 1-39.

**See Also**

[estimateGLMTrendedDisp](#)

**Examples**

```
design <- matrix(1,4,1)
y <- matrix((rbinom(400,mu=100,size=5)),100,4)
d1 <- dispCoxReidSplineTrend(y, design, df=3)
d2 <- dispCoxReidPowerTrend(y, design)
with(d2,plot(AveLogCPM,sqrt(dispersion)))
```

---

dropEmptyLevels

*Drop Levels of a Factor that Never Occur*

---

**Description**

Reform a factor so that only necessary levels are kept.

**Usage**

```
dropEmptyLevels(x)
```

**Arguments**

x a factor or a vector to be converted to a factor.

**Details**

In general, the levels of a factor, levels(x), may include values that never actually occur. This function drops any levels of that do not occur.

If x is not a factor, then the function returns factor(x). If x is a factor, then the function returns the same value as factor(x) or x[,drop=TRUE] but somewhat more efficiently.

**Value**

A factor with the same values as `x` but with a possibly reduced set of levels.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[factor](#).

**Examples**

```
x <- factor(c("a", "b"), levels=c("c", "b", "a"))
x
dropEmptyLevels(x)
```

---

edgeRUsersGuide

*View edgeR User's Guide*

---

**Description**

Finds the location of the edgeR User's Guide and optionally opens it.

**Usage**

```
edgeRUsersGuide(view=TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

`view` logical, should the document be opened using the default PDF document reader?

**Details**

The function `vignette("edgeR")` will find the short edgeR Vignette which describes how to obtain the edgeR User's Guide. The User's Guide is not itself a true vignette because it is not automatically generated using [Sweave](#) during the package build process. This means that it cannot be found using `vignette`, hence the need for this special function.

If the operating system is other than Windows, then the PDF viewer used is that given by `Sys.getenv("R_PDFVIEWER")`. The PDF viewer can be changed using `Sys.putenv(R_PDFVIEWER=)`.

**Value**

Character string giving the file location. If `view=TRUE`, the PDF document reader is started and the User's Guide is opened, as a side effect.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**[system](#)**Examples**

```
# To get the location:
edgeRUsersGuide(view=FALSE)
# To open in pdf viewer:
## Not run: edgeRUsersGuide()
```

---

`equalizeLibSizes`*Equalize Library Sizes by Quantile-to-Quantile Normalization*

---

**Description**

Adjusts counts so that the effective library sizes are equal, preserving fold-changes between groups and preserving biological variability within each group.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
equalizeLibSizes(y, dispersion=NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
equalizeLibSizes(y, group=NULL, dispersion=NULL,
                 lib.size=NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>          | matrix of counts or a <code>DGEList</code> object.  |
| <code>dispersion</code> | numeric scalar or vector of dispersion parameters. By default, is extracted from <code>y</code> or, if <code>y</code> contains no dispersion information, is set to <code>0.05</code> . |
| <code>group</code>      | vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each library.  |
| <code>lib.size</code>   | numeric vector giving the total count (sequence depth) for each library.  |
| <code>...</code>        | other arguments that are not currently used.  |

**Details**

This function implements the quantile-quantile normalization method of Robinson and Smyth (2008). It computes normalized counts, or pseudo-counts, used by `exactTest` and `estimateCommonDisp`.

The output pseudo-counts are the counts that would have theoretically arisen had the effective library sizes been equal for all samples. The pseudo-counts are computed in such a way as to

preserve fold-change differences between the groups defined by `y$samples$group` as well as biological variability within each group. Consequently, the results will depend on how the groups are defined.

Note that the column sums of the `pseudo.counts` matrix will not generally be equal, because the effective library sizes are not necessarily the same as actual library sizes and because the normalized pseudo counts are not equal to expected counts.

### Value

`equalizeLibSizes.default` returns a list with components:

```
pseudo.counts  numeric matrix of normalized pseudo-counts
pseudo.lib.size normalized library size
```

`equalizeLibSizes.DGEList` returns a `DGEList` object with the above two components added.

### Note

This function is intended mainly for internal edgeR use. It is not normally called directly by users.

### Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

### References

Robinson MD and Smyth GK (2008). Small-sample estimation of negative binomial dispersion, with applications to SAGE data. *Biostatistics*, 9, 321-332. <http://biostatistics.oxfordjournals.org/content/9/2/321>

### See Also

[q2qnbinom](#)

### Examples

```
ngenes <- 1000
nlibs <- 2
counts <- matrix(0,ngenes,nlibs)
colnames(counts) <- c("Sample1","Sample2")
counts[,1] <- rpois(ngenes,lambda=10)
counts[,2] <- rpois(ngenes,lambda=20)
summary(counts)
y <- DGEList(counts=counts)
out <- equalizeLibSizes(y)
summary(out$pseudo.counts)
```

---

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| estimateCommonDisp | <i>Estimate Common Negative Binomial Dispersion by Conditional Maximum Likelihood</i> |
|--------------------|---|

---

## Description

Maximizes the negative binomial conditional common likelihood to estimate a common dispersion value across all genes.

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateCommonDisp(y, tol=1e-06, rowsum.filter=5, verbose=FALSE, ...)
## Default S3 method:
estimateCommonDisp(y, group=NULL, lib.size=NULL, tol=1e-06,
                    rowsum.filter=5, verbose=FALSE, ...)
```

## Arguments

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| y             | matrix of counts or a DGEList object.   |
| tol           | the desired accuracy, passed to <code>optimize</code> .   |
| rowsum.filter | genes with total count (across all samples) below this value will be filtered out before estimating the dispersion. |
| verbose       | logical, if TRUE then the estimated dispersion and BCV will be printed to standard output.                          |
| group         | vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each library.  |
| lib.size      | numeric vector giving the total count (sequence depth) for each library.  |
| ...           | other arguments that are not currently used.  |

## Details

Implements the conditional maximum likelihood (CML) method proposed by Robinson and Smyth (2008) for estimating a common dispersion parameter. This method proves to be accurate and nearly unbiased even for small counts and small numbers of replicates.

The CML method involves computing a matrix of quantile-quantile normalized counts, called pseudo-counts. The pseudo-counts are adjusted in such a way that the library sizes are equal for all samples, while preserving differences between groups and variability within each group. The pseudo-counts are included in the output of the function, but are intended mainly for internal edgeR use.

## Value

estimateCommonDisp.DGEList adds the following components to the input DGEList object:

```
common.dispersion
  estimate of the common dispersion.
```

pseudo.counts numeric matrix of pseudo-counts.  
 pseudo.lib.size the common library size to which the pseudo-counts have been adjusted.  
 AveLogCPM numeric vector giving  $\log_2(\text{AveCPM})$  for each row of y.  
 estimateCommonDisp.default returns a numeric scalar of the common dispersion estimate.

### Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

### References

Robinson MD and Smyth GK (2008). Small-sample estimation of negative binomial dispersion, with applications to SAGE data. *Biostatistics*, 9, 321-332. <http://biostatistics.oxfordjournals.org/content/9/2/321>

### See Also

[equalizeLibSizes](#), [estimateTrendedDisp](#), [estimateTagwiseDisp](#)

### Examples

```
# True dispersion is 1/5=0.2
y <- matrix(rnbinom(250*4,mu=20,size=5),nrow=250,ncol=4)
dge <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,2,2))
dge <- estimateCommonDisp(dge, verbose=TRUE)
```

---

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| estimateDisp | <i>Estimate Common, Trended and Tagwise Negative Binomial dispersions by weighted likelihood empirical Bayes</i> |
|--------------|--|

---

### Description

Maximizes the negative binomial likelihood to give the estimate of the common, trended and tag-wise dispersions across all tags.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateDisp(y, design=NULL, prior.df=NULL, trend.method="locfit", tagwise=TRUE,
             span=NULL, min.row.sum=5, grid.length=21, grid.range=c(-10,10),
             robust=FALSE, winsor.tail.p=c(0.05,0.1), tol=1e-06, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
estimateDisp(y, design=NULL, prior.df=NULL, trend.method="locfit", tagwise=TRUE,
             span=NULL, min.row.sum=5, grid.length=21, grid.range=c(-10,10),
             robust=FALSE, winsor.tail.p=c(0.05,0.1), tol=1e-06, ...)
## Default S3 method:
```



```
estimateDisp(y, design=NULL, group=NULL, lib.size=NULL, offset=NULL,
             prior.df=NULL, trend.method="locfit", tagwise=TRUE, span=NULL,
             min.row.sum=5, grid.length=21, grid.range=c(-10,10),
             robust=FALSE, winsor.tail.p=c(0.05,0.1), tol=1e-06, weights=NULL, ...)
```

### Arguments

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>             | matrix of counts, or a <code>DGEList</code> object, or a <code>SummarizedExperiment</code> object.  |
| <code>design</code>        | numeric design matrix. Defaults to <code>model.matrix(~group)</code> if <code>group</code> is specified and otherwise to a single column of ones.   |
| <code>prior.df</code>      | prior degrees of freedom. It is used in calculating <code>prior.n</code> .  |
| <code>trend.method</code>  | method for estimating dispersion trend. Possible values are "locfit" (default), "none", "movingave", "loess" and "locfit.mixed", which uses a polynomial of degree 1 for lowly expressed genes.   |
| <code>tagwise</code>       | logical, should the tagwise dispersions be estimated?   |
| <code>span</code>          | width of the smoothing window, as a proportion of the data set.   |
| <code>min.row.sum</code>   | numeric scalar giving a value for the filtering out of low abundance tags. Only tags with total sum of counts above this value are used. Low abundance tags can adversely affect the dispersion estimation, so this argument allows the user to select an appropriate filter threshold for the tag abundance. |
| <code>grid.length</code>   | the number of points on which the interpolation is applied for each tag.  |
| <code>grid.range</code>    | the range of the grid points around the trend on a log <sub>2</sub> scale.  |
| <code>robust</code>        | logical, should the estimation of <code>prior.df</code> be robustified against hypervariable genes?   |
| <code>winsor.tail.p</code> | numeric vector of length 1 or 2, giving left and right tail proportions of the deviances to Winsorize when estimating <code>prior.df</code> .   |
| <code>tol</code>           | the desired accuracy, passed to <a href="#">optimize</a>  |
| <code>group</code>         | vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each library. Defaults to a vector of ones with length equal to the number of libraries.   |
| <code>lib.size</code>      | numeric vector giving the total count (sequence depth) for each library.  |
| <code>offset</code>        | offset matrix for the log-linear model, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> . Defaults to the log-effective library sizes.  |
| <code>weights</code>       | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights  |
| <code>...</code>           | other arguments that are not currently used.  |

### Details

This function calculates a matrix of likelihoods for each tag at a set of dispersion grid points, and then applies weighted likelihood empirical Bayes method to obtain posterior dispersion estimates. If there is no design matrix, it calculates the quantile conditional likelihood for each tag and then maximizes it. In this case, it is similar to the function `estimateCommonDisp` and `estimateTagwiseDisp`. If a design matrix is given, it calculates the adjusted profile log-likelihood for each tag and then maximizes it. In this case, it is similar to the functions `estimateGLMCommonDisp`, `estimateGLMTrendedDisp` and `estimateGLMTagwiseDisp`.

Note that the terms 'tag' and 'gene' are synonymous here.

**Value**

estimateDisp.DGEList adds the following components to the input DGEList object:

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| design             | the design matrix.  |
| common.dispersion  | estimate of the common dispersion.  |
| trended.dispersion | estimates of the trended dispersions.   |
| tagwise.dispersion | tagwise estimates of the dispersion parameter if tagwise=TRUE.  |
| AveLogCPM          | numeric vector giving log <sub>2</sub> (AveCPM) for each row of y.  |
| trend.method       | method for estimating dispersion trend as given in the input.   |
| prior.df           | prior degrees of freedom. If robust=TRUE then prior.df is a vector with smaller values assigned to hypervariable outlier genes.                                   |
| prior.n            | estimate of the prior weight, i.e. the smoothing parameter that indicates the weight to put on the common likelihood compared to the individual tag's likelihood. |
| span               | width of the smoothing window used in estimating dispersions.   |

estimateDisp.SummarizedExperiment converts the input SummarizedExperiment object into a DGEList object, and then calls estimateDisp.DGEList. The output is a DGEList object.

estimateDisp.default returns a list containing common.dispersion, trended.dispersion, tagwise.dispersion (if tagwise=TRUE), span, prior.df and prior.n.

**Note**

The estimateDisp function doesn't give exactly the same estimates as the traditional calling sequences.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth

**References**

Chen, Y, Lun, ATL, and Smyth, GK (2014). Differential expression analysis of complex RNA-seq experiments using edgeR. In: *Statistical Analysis of Next Generation Sequence Data*, Somnath Datta and Daniel S. Nettleton (eds), Springer, New York, pages 51-74. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/edgeRChapterPreprint.pdf>

Phipson, B, Lee, S, Majewski, IJ, Alexander, WS, and Smyth, GK (2016). Robust hyperparameter estimation protects against hypervariable genes and improves power to detect differential expression. *Annals of Applied Statistics* 10, 946-963. doi:10.1214/16AOAS920

**See Also**

[estimateCommonDisp](#), [estimateTagwiseDisp](#), [estimateGLMCommonDisp](#), [estimateGLMTrendedDisp](#), [estimateGLMTagwiseDisp](#)

## Examples

```
# True dispersion is 1/5=0.2
y <- matrix(rnbinom(1000, mu=10, size=5), ncol=4)
group <- factor(c(1,1,2,2))
design <- model.matrix(~group)
d <- DGEList(counts=y, group=group)
d1 <- estimateDisp(d)
d2 <- estimateDisp(d, design)
```

---

estimateExonGenewiseDisp

*Estimate Genewise Dispersions from Exon-Level Count Data*

---

## Description

Estimate a dispersion value for each gene from exon-level count data by collapsing exons into the genes to which they belong.

## Usage

```
estimateExonGenewiseDisp(y, geneID, group=NULL)
```

## Arguments

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| y      | either a matrix of exon-level counts or a <code>DGEList</code> object with (at least) elements <code>counts</code> (table of counts summarized at the exon level) and <code>samples</code> (data frame containing information about experimental group, library size and normalization factor for the library size). Each row of y should represent one exon. |
| geneID | vector of length equal to the number of rows of y, which provides the gene identifier for each exon in y. These identifiers are used to group the relevant exons into genes for the gene-level analysis of splice variation.  |
| group  | factor supplying the experimental group/condition to which each sample (column of y) belongs. If <code>NULL</code> (default) the function will try to extract it from y, which only works if y is a <code>DGEList</code> object.  |

## Details

This function can be used to compute genewise dispersion estimates (for an experiment with a one-way, or multiple group, layout) from exon-level count data. `estimateCommonDisp` and `estimateTagwiseDisp` are used to do the computation and estimation, and the default arguments for those functions are used.

## Value

`estimateExonGenewiseDisp` returns a vector of genewise dispersion estimates, one for each unique `geneID`.

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[estimateCommonDisp](#) and related functions for estimating the dispersion parameter for the negative binomial model.

**Examples**

```
# generate exon counts from NB, create list object
y<-matrix(rnbinom(40,size=1,mu=10),nrow=10)
d<-DGEList(counts=y,group=rep(1:2,each=2))
genes <- rep(c("gene.1","gene.2"), each=5)
estimateExonGenewiseDisp(d, genes)
```

---

estimateGLMCommonDisp *Estimate Common Dispersion for Negative Binomial GLMs*

---

**Description**

Estimates a common negative binomial dispersion parameter for a DGE dataset with a general experimental design.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateGLMCommonDisp(y, design=NULL, method="CoxReid",
  subset=10000, verbose=FALSE, ...)

## Default S3 method:
estimateGLMCommonDisp(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL,
  method="CoxReid", subset=10000, AveLogCPM=NULL,
  verbose=FALSE, weights=NULL,...)
```

**Arguments**

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| y         | object containing read counts, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> .   |
| design    | numeric design matrix, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> .   |
| offset    | numeric vector or matrix of offsets for the log-linear models, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> .   |
| method    | method for estimating the dispersion. Possible values are "CoxReid", "Pearson" or "deviance".  |
| subset    | maximum number of rows of y to use in the calculation. Rows used are chosen evenly spaced by AveLogCPM using <a href="#">systematicSubset</a> .                  |
| AveLogCPM | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene.   |
| verbose   | logical, if TRUE estimated dispersion and BCV will be printed to standard output.  |
| weights   | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights   |
| ...       | other arguments are passed to lower-level functions. See <a href="#">dispCoxReid</a> , <a href="#">dispPearson</a> and <a href="#">dispDeviance</a> for details. |

## Details

This function calls `dispCoxReid`, `dispPearson` or `dispDeviance` depending on the method specified. See [dispCoxReid](#) for details of the three methods and a discussion of their relative performance.

## Value

The default method returns a numeric vector of length 1 containing the estimated common dispersion.

The `DGEList` method returns the same `DGEList` `y` as input but with `common.dispersion` as an added component. The output object will also contain a component `AveLogCPM` if it was not already present in `y`.

## Author(s)

Gordon Smyth, Davis McCarthy, Yunshun Chen

## References

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

## See Also

[dispCoxReid](#), [dispPearson](#), [dispDeviance](#)

[estimateGLMTrendedDisp](#) for trended dispersions or [estimateGLMTagwiseDisp](#) for genewise dispersions in the context of a generalized linear model.

[estimateCommonDisp](#) for the common dispersion or [estimateTagwiseDisp](#) for genewise dispersions in the context of a multiple group experiment (one-way layout).

## Examples

```
# True dispersion is 1/size=0.1
y <- matrix(rnbinom(1000,mu=10,size=10),ncol=4)
d <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,2,2))
design <- model.matrix(~group, data=d$samples)
d1 <- estimateGLMCommonDisp(d, design, verbose=TRUE)

# Compare with classic CML estimator:
d2 <- estimateCommonDisp(d, verbose=TRUE)

# See example(glmFit) for a different example
```

---

estimateGLMRobustDisp *Empirical Robust Bayes Tagwise Dispersions for Negative Binomial GLMs using Observation Weights*

---

## Description

Compute a robust estimate of the negative binomial dispersion parameter for each gene, with expression levels specified by a log-linear model, using observation weights. These observation weights will be stored and used later for estimating regression parameters.

## Usage

```
estimateGLMRobustDisp(y, design = NULL, prior.df = 10, update.trend = TRUE,
                      trend.method = "bin.loess", maxit = 6, k = 1.345,
                      residual.type = "pearson", verbose = FALSE,
                      record = FALSE)
```

## Arguments

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| y             | a DGEList object.  |
| design        | numeric design matrix, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> .   |
| prior.df      | prior degrees of freedom.  |
| update.trend  | logical. Should the trended dispersion be re-estimated at each iteration?  |
| trend.method  | method (low-level function) used to estimate the trended dispersions. <a href="#">estimateGLMTrendedDisp</a>                                       |
| maxit         | maximum number of iterations for weighted <a href="#">estimateGLMTagwiseDisp</a> .   |
| k             | the tuning constant for Huber estimator. If the absolute value of residual (r) is less than k, its observation weight is 1, otherwise $k/abs(r)$ . |
| residual.type | type of residual (r) used for estimation observation weight  |
| verbose       | logical. Should verbose comments be printed?   |
| record        | logical. Should information for each iteration be recorded (and returned as a list)?   |

## Details

Moderation of dispersion estimates towards a trend can be sensitive to outliers, resulting in an increase in false positives. That is, since the dispersion estimates are moderated downwards toward the trend and because the regression parameter estimates may be affected by the outliers, some genes are incorrectly deemed to be significantly differentially expressed. This function uses an iterative procedure where weights are calculated from residuals and estimates are made after re-weighting.

The robustly computed genewise estimates are reported in the `tagwise.dispersion` vector of the returned DGEList. The terms ‘tag’ and ‘gene’ are synonymous in this context.

Note: it is not necessary to first calculate the common, trended and genewise dispersion estimates. If these are not available, the function will first calculate this (in an unweighted) fashion.

**Value**

estimateGLMRobustDisp produces a DGEList object, which contains the (robust) genewise dispersion parameter estimate for each gene for the negative binomial model that maximizes the weighted Cox-Reid adjusted profile likelihood, as well as the observation weights. The observation weights are calculated using residuals and the Huber function.

Note that when record=TRUE, a simple list of DGEList objects is returned, one for each iteration (this is for debugging or tracking purposes).

**Author(s)**

Xiaobei Zhou, Mark D. Robinson

**References**

Zhou X, Lindsay H, Robinson MD (2014). Robustly detecting differential expression in RNA sequencing data using observation weights. *Nucleic Acids Research*, 42(11), e91.

**See Also**

This function calls [estimateGLMTrendedDisp](#) and [estimateGLMTagwiseDisp](#).

**Examples**

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(100*6,mu=10,size=1/0.1),ncol=6)
d <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,1,2,2,2),lib.size=c(1000:1005))
d <- normLibSizes(d)
design <- model.matrix(~group, data=d$samples) # Define the design matrix for the full model
d <- estimateGLMRobustDisp(d, design)
summary(d$tagwise.dispersion)
```

---

estimateGLMTagwiseDisp

*Empirical Bayes Tagwise Dispersions for Negative Binomial GLMs*

---

**Description**

Compute an empirical Bayes estimate of the negative binomial dispersion parameter for each tag, with expression levels specified by a log-linear model.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateGLMTagwiseDisp(y, design=NULL, prior.df=10,
                       trend=!is.null(y$trended.dispersion), span=NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
estimateGLMTagwiseDisp(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL, dispersion,
                       prior.df=10, trend=TRUE, span=NULL, AveLogCPM=NULL,
                       weights=NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>          | matrix of counts or a <code>DGEList</code> object.  |
| <code>design</code>     | numeric design matrix, as for <code>glmFit</code> .   |
| <code>trend</code>      | logical. Should the prior be the trended dispersion (TRUE) or the common dispersion (FALSE)?                            |
| <code>offset</code>     | offset matrix for the log-linear model, as for <code>glmFit</code> . Defaults to the log-effective library sizes.       |
| <code>dispersion</code> | common or trended dispersion estimates, used as an initial estimate for the tagwise estimates.                          |
| <code>prior.df</code>   | prior degrees of freedom.   |
| <code>span</code>       | width of the smoothing window, in terms of proportion of the data set. Default value decreases with the number of tags. |
| <code>AveLogCPM</code>  | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million for each tag  |
| <code>weights</code>    | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights  |
| <code>...</code>        | other arguments are passed to <code>dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise</code> .  |

**Details**

This function implements the empirical Bayes strategy proposed by McCarthy et al (2012) for estimating the tagwise negative binomial dispersions. The experimental conditions are specified by design matrix allowing for multiple explanatory factors. The empirical Bayes posterior is implemented as a conditional likelihood with tag-specific weights, and the conditional likelihood is computed using Cox-Reid approximate conditional likelihood (Cox and Reid, 1987).

The prior degrees of freedom determines the weight given to the global dispersion trend. The larger the prior degrees of freedom, the more the tagwise dispersions are squeezed towards the global trend.

Note that the terms ‘tag’ and ‘gene’ are synonymous here. The function is only named ‘Tagwise’ for historical reasons.

This function calls the lower-level function `dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise`.

**Value**

`estimateGLMTagwiseDisp.DGEList` produces a `DGEList` object, which contains the tagwise dispersion parameter estimate for each tag for the negative binomial model that maximizes the Cox-Reid adjusted profile likelihood. The tagwise dispersions are simply added to the `DGEList` object provided as the argument to the function.

`estimateGLMTagwiseDisp.default` returns a vector of the tagwise dispersion estimates.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth, Davis McCarthy



## References

Cox, DR, and Reid, N (1987). Parameter orthogonality and approximate conditional inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* 49, 1-39.

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

## See Also

[estimateGLMCommonDisp](#) for common dispersion or [estimateGLMTrendedDisp](#) for trended dispersion in the context of a generalized linear model.

[estimateCommonDisp](#) for common dispersion or [estimateTagwiseDisp](#) for tagwise dispersions in the context of a multiple group experiment (one-way layout).

## Examples

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(1000,mu=10,size=10),ncol=4)
d <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,2,2),lib.size=c(1000:1003))
design <- model.matrix(~group, data=d$samples) # Define the design matrix for the full model
d <- estimateGLMTrendedDisp(d, design, min.n=10)
d <- estimateGLMTagwiseDisp(d, design)
summary(d$tagwise.dispersion)
```

---

estimateGLMTrendedDisp

*Estimate Trended Dispersion for Negative Binomial GLMs*

---

## Description

Estimates the abundance-dispersion trend by Cox-Reid approximate profile likelihood.

## Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateGLMTrendedDisp(y, design=NULL, method="auto", ...)
## Default S3 method:
estimateGLMTrendedDisp(y, design=NULL, offset=NULL, AveLogCPM=NULL,
                        method="auto", weights=NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

`y` a matrix of counts or a `DGEList` object.)  
`design` numeric design matrix, as for [glmFit](#).

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| method    | method (low-level function) used to estimate the trended dispersions. Possible values are "auto" (default, switch to "bin.spline" method if the number of genes is great than 200 and "power" method otherwise), "bin.spline", "bin.loess" (which both result in a call to dispBinTrend), "power" (call to dispCoxReidPowerTrend), or "spline" (call to dispCoxReidSplineTrend). |
| offset    | numeric scalar, vector or matrix giving the linear model offsets, as for <code>glmFit</code> .   |
| AveLogCPM | numeric vector giving average log <sub>2</sub> counts per million for each gene.   |
| weights   | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights   |
| ...       | other arguments are passed to lower-level functions <code>dispBinTrend</code> , <code>dispCoxReidPowerTrend</code> or <code>dispCoxReidSplineTrend</code> .  |

### Details

Estimates the dispersion parameter for each gene with a trend that depends on the overall level of expression for that gene. This is done for a DGE dataset for general experimental designs by using Cox-Reid approximate conditional inference for a negative binomial generalized linear model for each gene with the unadjusted counts and design matrix provided.

The function provides an object-orientated interface to lower-level functions.

### Value

When the input object is a `DGEList`, `estimateGLMTrendedDisp` produces a `DGEList` object, which contains the estimates of the trended dispersion parameter for the negative binomial model according to the method applied.

When the input object is a numeric matrix, it returns a vector of trended dispersion estimates calculated by one of the lower-level functions `dispBinTrend`, `dispCoxReidPowerTrend` and `dispCoxReidSplineTrend`.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth, Davis McCarthy, Yunshun Chen

### References

Cox, DR, and Reid, N (1987). Parameter orthogonality and approximate conditional inference. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society Series B* 49, 1-39.

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

### See Also

`dispBinTrend`, `dispCoxReidPowerTrend` and `dispCoxReidSplineTrend` for details on how the calculations are done.

**Examples**

```

ngenes <- 250
nlibs <- 4
y <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs,mu=10,size=10),ngenes,nlibs)
d <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,2,2),lib.size=c(1000:1003))
design <- model.matrix(~group, data=d$samples)
disp <- estimateGLMTrendedDisp(d, design, min.n=25, df=3)
plotBCV(disp)

```

---

estimateTagwiseDisp     *Estimate Empirical Bayes Tagwise Dispersion Values*

---

**Description**

Estimates tagwise dispersion values by an empirical Bayes method based on weighted conditional maximum likelihood.

**Usage**

```

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateTagwiseDisp(y, prior.df=10, trend="movingave", span=NULL, method="grid",
  grid.length=11, grid.range=c(-6,6), tol=1e-06, verbose=FALSE, ...)
## Default S3 method:
estimateTagwiseDisp(y, group=NULL, lib.size=NULL, dispersion, AveLogCPM=NULL,
  prior.df=10, trend="movingave", span=NULL, method="grid", grid.length=11,
  grid.range=c(-6,6), tol=1e-06, verbose=FALSE, ...)

```

**Arguments**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| y           | matrix of counts or a DGEList object.  |
| prior.df    | prior degrees of freedom.  |
| trend       | method for estimating dispersion trend. Possible values are "movingave" (default), "loess" and "none".   |
| span        | width of the smoothing window, as a proportion of the data set.  |
| method      | method for maximizing the posterior likelihood. Possible values are "grid" (default) for interpolation on grid points or "optimize" to call the function of the same name. |
| grid.length | for method="grid", the number of points on which the interpolation is applied for each tag.  |
| grid.range  | for method="grid", the range of the grid points around the trend on a log2 scale.  |
| tol         | for method="optimize", the tolerance for Newton-Rhapson iterations.  |
| verbose     | logical, if TRUE then diagnostic output is produced during the estimation process.   |
| group       | vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each library.   |
| lib.size    | numeric vector giving the total count (sequence depth) for each library.   |

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| dispersion | common dispersion estimate, used as an initial estimate for the tagwise estimates. |
| AveLogCPM  | numeric vector giving average log2 counts per million for each tag                 |
| ...        | other arguments that are not currently used.                                       |

## Details

This function implements the empirical Bayes strategy proposed by Robinson and Smyth (2007) for estimating the tagwise negative binomial dispersions. The experimental design is assumed to be a oneway layout with one or more experimental groups. The empirical Bayes posterior is implemented as a conditional likelihood with tag-specific weights.

The prior values for the dispersions are determined by a global trend. The individual tagwise dispersions are then squeezed towards this trend. The prior degrees of freedom determines the weight given to the prior. The larger the prior degrees of freedom, the more the tagwise dispersions are squeezed towards the global trend. If the number of libraries is large, the prior becomes less important and the tagwise dispersion are determined more by the individual tagwise data.

If `trend="none"`, then the prior dispersion is just a constant, the common dispersion. Otherwise, the trend is determined by a moving average (`trend="movingave"`) or loess smoother applied to the tagwise conditional log-likelihood. `method="loess"` applies a loess curve of degree 0 as implemented in [loessByCol](#).

`method="optimize"` is not recommended for routine use as it is very slow. It is included for testing purposes.

Note that the terms ‘tag’ and ‘gene’ are synonymous here. The function is only named ‘Tagwise’ for historical reasons.

## Value

`estimateTagwiseDisp.DGEList` adds the following components to the input `DGEList` object:

|                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <code>prior.df</code>           | prior degrees of freedom.  |
| <code>prior.n</code>            | estimate of the prior weight.  |
| <code>tagwise.dispersion</code> | numeric vector of the tagwise dispersion estimates.                    |
| <code>span</code>               | width of the smoothing window, in terms of proportion of the data set. |

`estimateTagwiseDisp.default` returns a numeric vector of the tagwise dispersion estimates.

## Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

## References

Robinson, MD, and Smyth, GK (2007). Moderated statistical tests for assessing differences in tag abundance. *Bioinformatics* 23, 2881-2887. doi:[10.1093/bioinformatics/btm453](https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btm453)

**See Also**

[estimateCommonDisp](#) is usually run before [estimateTagwiseDisp](#).

[movingAverageByCol](#) and [loessByCol](#) implement the moving average or loess smoothers.

**Examples**

```
# True dispersion is 1/5=0.2
y <- matrix(rnbinom(250*4,mu=20,size=5),nrow=250,ncol=4)
dge <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,2,2))
dge <- estimateCommonDisp(dge)
dge <- estimateTagwiseDisp(dge)
```

---

estimateTrendedDisp     *Estimate Empirical Bayes Trended Dispersion Values*

---

**Description**

Estimates trended dispersion values by an empirical Bayes method.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
estimateTrendedDisp(y, method="bin.spline", df=5, span=2/3, ...)
## Default S3 method:
estimateTrendedDisp(y, group=NULL, lib.size=NULL, AveLogCPM=NULL,
                    method="bin.spline", df=5, span=2/3, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| y         | matrix of counts or a DGEList object.   |
| method    | method used to estimated the trended dispersions. Possible values are "bin.spline", and "bin.loess".                                      |
| df        | integer giving the degrees of freedom of the spline function if "bin.spline" method is used, see ns in the splines package. Default is 5. |
| span      | scalar, passed to loess to determine the amount of smoothing for the loess fit when "loess" method is used. Default is 2/3.               |
| group     | vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each library.  |
| lib.size  | numeric vector giving the total count (sequence depth) for each library.  |
| AveLogCPM | numeric vector giving average log2 counts per million for each tag  |
| ...       | other arguments that are not currently used.  |

### Details

This function takes the binned common dispersion and abundance, and fits a smooth curve through these binned values using either natural cubic splines or loess. From this smooth curve it predicts the dispersion value for each gene based on the gene's overall abundance. This results in estimates for the NB dispersion parameter which have a dependence on the overall expression level of the gene, and thus have an abundance-dependent trend.

### Value

An object of class `DGEList` with the same components as for `estimateCommonDisp` plus the trended dispersion estimates for each gene.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

### See Also

`estimateCommonDisp` estimates a common value for the dispersion parameter for all genes - should generally be run before `estimateTrendedDisp`.

### Examples

```
ngenes <- 1000
nlib <- 4
log2cpm <- seq(from=0, to=16, length=ngenes)
lib.size <- 1e7
mu <- 2^log2cpm * lib.size * 1e-6
dispersion <- 1/sqrt(mu) + 0.1
counts <- rnbinom(ngenes*nlib, mu=mu, size=1/dispersion)
counts <- matrix(counts, ngenes, nlib)
y <- DGEList(counts, lib.size=rep(lib.size, nlib))
y <- estimateCommonDisp(y)
y <- estimateTrendedDisp(y)
```

---

exactTest

*Exact Tests for Differences between Two Groups of Negative-Binomial Counts*

---

### Description

Compute genewise exact tests for differences in the means between two groups of negative-binomially distributed counts.

**Usage**

```

exactTest(object, pair=1:2, dispersion="auto", rejection.region="doubletail",
          big.count=900, prior.count=0.125)
exactTestDoubleTail(y1, y2, dispersion=0, big.count=900)
exactTestBySmallP(y1, y2, dispersion=0)
exactTestByDeviance(y1, y2, dispersion=0)
exactTestBetaApprox(y1, y2, dispersion=0)

```

**Arguments**

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| object           | an object of class <a href="#">DGEList</a> .  |
| pair             | vector of length two, either numeric or character, providing the pair of groups to be compared; if a character vector, then should be the names of two groups (e.g. two levels of <code>object\$samples\$group</code> ); if numeric, then groups to be compared are chosen by finding the levels of <code>object\$samples\$group</code> corresponding to those numeric values and using those levels as the groups to be compared; if NULL, then first two levels of <code>object\$samples\$group</code> (a factor) are used. Note that the first group listed in the pair is the baseline for the comparison—so if the pair is <code>c("A", "B")</code> then the comparison is B - A, so genes with positive log-fold change are up-regulated in group B compared with group A (and vice versa for genes with negative log-fold change). |
| dispersion       | either a numeric vector of dispersions or a character string indicating that dispersions should be taken from the data object. If a numeric vector, then can be either of length one or of length equal to the number of genes. Allowable character values are "common", "trended", "tagwise" or "auto". Default behavior ("auto" is to use most complex dispersions found in data object.  |
| rejection.region | type of rejection region for two-sided exact test. Possible values are "doubletail", "smallp" or "deviance".  |
| big.count        | count size above which asymptotic beta approximation will be used.  |
| prior.count      | average prior count used to shrink log-fold-changes. Larger values produce more shrinkage.  |
| y1               | numeric matrix of counts for the first the two experimental groups to be tested for differences. Rows correspond to genes and columns to libraries. Libraries are assumed to be equal in size - e.g. adjusted pseudocounts from the output of <a href="#">equalizeLibSizes</a> .  |
| y2               | numeric matrix of counts for the second of the two experimental groups to be tested for differences. Rows correspond to genes and columns to libraries. Libraries are assumed to be equal in size - e.g. adjusted pseudocounts from the output of <a href="#">equalizeLibSizes</a> . Must have the same number of rows as y1.   |

**Details**

The functions test for differential expression between two groups of count libraries. They implement the exact test proposed by Robinson and Smyth (2008) for a difference in mean between two groups of negative binomial random variables. The functions accept two groups of count libraries,

and a test is performed for each row of data. For each row, the test is conditional on the sum of counts for that row. The test can be viewed as a generalization of the well-known exact binomial test (implemented in `binomTest`) but generalized to overdispersed counts.

`exactTest` is the main user-level function, and produces an object containing all the necessary components for downstream analysis. `exactTest` calls one of the low level functions `exactTestDoubleTail`, `exactTestBetaApprox`, `exactTestBySmallP` or `exactTestByDeviance` to do the p-value computation. The low level functions all assume that the libraries have been normalized to have the same size, i.e., to have the same expected column sum under the null hypothesis. `exactTest` equalizes the library sizes using `equalizeLibSizes` before calling the low level functions.

The functions `exactTestDoubleTail`, `exactTestBySmallP` and `exactTestByDeviance` correspond to different ways to define the two-sided rejection region when the two groups have different numbers of samples. `exactTestBySmallP` implements the method of small probabilities as proposed by Robinson and Smyth (2008). This method corresponds exactly to `binomTest` as the dispersion approaches zero, but gives poor results when the dispersion is very large. `exactTestDoubleTail` computes two-sided p-values by doubling the smaller tail probability. `exactTestByDeviance` uses the deviance goodness of fit statistics to define the rejection region, and is therefore equivalent to a conditional likelihood ratio test.

Note that `rejection.region="smallp"` is no longer recommended. It is preserved as an option only for backward compatibility with early versions of `edgeR`. `rejection.region="deviance"` has good theoretical statistical properties but is relatively slow to compute. `rejection.region="doubletail"` is just slightly more conservative than `rejection.region="deviance"`, but is recommended because of its much greater speed. For general remarks on different types of rejection regions for exact tests see Gibbons and Pratt (1975).

`exactTestBetaApprox` implements an asymptotic beta distribution approximation to the conditional count distribution. It is called by the other functions for rows with both group counts greater than `big.count`.

## Value

`exactTest` produces an object of class `DGEEExact` containing the following components:

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>table</code>      | data frame containing columns for the log <sub>2</sub> -fold-change ( <code>logFC</code> ), the average log <sub>2</sub> -counts-per-million ( <code>logCPM</code> ), and the two-sided p-value ( <code>PValue</code> ). |
| <code>comparison</code> | character vector giving the names of the two groups being compared.  |
| <code>genes</code>      | data frame containing annotation for each gene; taken from object.   |

The low-level functions, `exactTestDoubleTail` etc, produce a numeric vector of genewise p-values, one for each row of `y1` and `y2`.

## Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

## References

- Robinson MD and Smyth GK (2008). Small-sample estimation of negative binomial dispersion, with applications to SAGE data. *Biostatistics*, 9, 321-332.
- Gibbons, JD and Pratt, JW (1975). P-values: interpretation and methodology. *The American Statistician* 29, 20-25.



**See Also**

[equalizeLibSizes](#), [binomTest](#)

**Examples**

```
# generate raw counts from NB, create list object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(80,size=1/0.2,mu=10),nrow=20,ncol=4)
d <- DGEList(counts=y, group=c(1,1,2,2), lib.size=rep(1000,4))

de <- exactTest(d, dispersion=0.2)
topTags(de)

# same p-values using low-level function directly
p.value <- exactTestDoubleTail(y[,1:2], y[,3:4], dispersion=0.2)
sort(p.value)[1:10]
```

---

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>expandAsMatrix</code> | <i>expandAsMatrix</i> |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|

---

**Description**

Expand scalar or vector to a matrix.

**Usage**

```
expandAsMatrix(x, dim=NULL, byrow=TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>x</code>     | scalar, vector, matrix or <code>CompressedMatrix</code> .   |
| <code>dim</code>   | integer vector of length 2 specifying the required dimensions of the output matrix.                   |
| <code>byrow</code> | logical scalar specifying if matrix should be filled by columns or rows for a vector <code>x</code> . |

**Details**

This function expands a scalar, row/column vector or `CompressedMatrix` to be a matrix of dimensions `dim`. It is used internally in `edgeR` to convert offsets, weights and other values to a matrix for consistent handling. If `dim` is `NULL`, the function is equivalent to calling `as.matrix(x)`.

If `x` is a vector, its length must match one of the output dimensions. The matrix will then be filled by repeating the matrix across the matching dimension. For example, if `length(x)==dim[1]`, the matrix will be filled such that each row contains `x`. If both dimensions match, filling is determined by `byrow`, with filling by rows as the default.

If `x` `CompressedMatrix` object, the size of any non-repeated dimensions must be consistent with corresponding output dimension. The `byrow` argument will be ignored as the repeat specifications will dictate how expansion should be performed. See [?CompressedMatrix](#) for more details.

**Value**

Numeric matrix of dimension dim.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**Examples**

```
expandAsMatrix(1:3,c(4,3))  
expandAsMatrix(1:4,c(4,3))
```

---

featureCounts2DGEList *Convert featureCounts object to a DGEList*

---

**Description**

Converts the list output by Rsubread: : featureCounts to a DGEList object.

**Usage**

```
featureCounts2DGEList(x)
```

**Arguments**

x                    a list produced by Rsubread: : featureCounts.

**Details**

Rsubread's featureCounts function counts reads by features (typically exons or genomic intervals) or meta-features (typically genes). It may also count reads crossing exon-exon junctions or reads internal to exons. This function assembles all the read counts output by featureCounts into an DGEList, ensuring unique row.names where appropriate. The proportion of reads assigned to features is also stored.

**Value**

A [DGEList](#) data object.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth.

**See Also**

[DGEList-class](#)

filterByExpr

*Filter Genes By Expression Level***Description**

Determine which genes have sufficiently large counts to be retained in a statistical analysis.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
filterByExpr(y, design = NULL, group = NULL, lib.size = NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
filterByExpr(y, design = NULL, group = NULL, lib.size = NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
filterByExpr(y, design = NULL, group = NULL, lib.size = NULL,
             min.count = 10, min.total.count = 15, large.n = 10, min.prop = 0.7, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| y               | matrix of counts, or a DGEList object, or a SummarizedExperiment object.   |
| design          | design matrix. Ignored if group is not NULL. Defaults to y\$design if y is a DGEList.  |
| group           | vector or factor giving group membership for a oneway layout, if appropriate. Defaults to y\$samples\$group if y is a DGEList.   |
| lib.size        | library size. Defaults to colSums(y) if y is a matrix or to normLibSizes(y) if y is a DGEList.   |
| min.count       | numeric. Minimum count required for at least some samples.   |
| min.total.count | numeric. Minimum total count required across all samples.  |
| large.n         | integer. Number of samples per group that is considered to be “large”.   |
| min.prop        | numeric. In large sample situations, the minimum proportion of samples in a group that a gene needs to be expressed in. See Details below for the exact formula.                             |
| ...             | any other arguments. For the DGEList and SummarizedExperiment methods, other arguments will be passed to the default method. For the default method, other arguments are not currently used. |

**Details**

This function implements the filtering strategy that was described informally by Chen et al (2016). Roughly speaking, the strategy keeps genes that have at least min.count reads in a worthwhile number samples.

More precisely, the filtering keeps genes that have  $CPM \geq CPM.cutoff$  in `MinSampleSize` samples, where  $CPM.cutoff = min.count / median(lib.size) * 1e6$  and `MinSampleSize` is the smallest group sample size or, more generally, the minimum inverse leverage computed from the design matrix.

If all the group samples sizes are large, then the above filtering rule is relaxed slightly. If `MinSampleSize > large.n`, then genes are kept if `CPM >= CPM.cutoff` in `k` samples where `k = large.n + (MinSampleSize - large.n) * min.prop`. This rule requires that genes are expressed in at least `min.prop * MinSampleSize` samples, even when `MinSampleSize` is large.

In addition, each kept gene is required to have at least `min.total.count` reads across all the samples.

### Value

Logical vector of length `nrow(y)` indicating which rows of `y` to keep in the analysis.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth

### References

Chen Y, Lun ATL, and Smyth, GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using Rsubread and the edgeR quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438. <https://f1000research.com/articles/5-1438>

### Examples

```
## Not run:
keep <- filterByExpr(y, design)
y <- y[keep,]

## End(Not run)
```

---

getCounts

*Extract Specified Component of a DGEList Object*

---

### Description

`getCounts(y)` returns the matrix of read counts `y$counts`.

`getOffset(y)` returns offsets for the log-linear predictor account for sequencing depth and possibly other normalization factors. Specifically it returns the matrix `y$offset` if it is non-null, otherwise it returns the log product of `lib.size` and `norm.factors` from `y$samples`.

`getDispersion(y)` returns the most complex dispersion estimates (common, trended or genewise) found in `y`.

### Usage

```
getCounts(y)
getOffset(y)
getDispersion(y)
```

**Arguments**

`y` DGEList object containing (at least) the elements counts (table of raw counts), `group` (factor indicating group) and `lib.size` (numeric vector of library sizes)

**Value**

`getCounts` returns the matrix of counts. `getOffset` returns a numeric matrix or vector. `getDispersion` returns vector of dispersion values.

**Author(s)**

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[DGEList-class](#)

**Examples**

```
# generate raw counts from NB, create list object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(20,size=5,mu=10),5,4)
d <- DGEList(counts=y, group=c(1,1,2,2), lib.size=1001:1004)
getCounts(d)
getOffset(d)
d <- estimateCommonDisp(d)
getDispersion(d)
```

---

getNormLibSizes

*Effective Library Sizes*

---

**Description**

Extract effective (normalized) library sizes.

**Usage**

```
## Default S3 method:
getNormLibSizes(y, log = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

`y` a object of class DGEList, DGEGLM or DGELRT. Alternatively a numeric matrix or an object that can be coerced to a numeric matrix.

`log` logical, if TRUE then the library sizes are return on the natural log scale.

... other arguments are not currently used.

**Details**

This function extracts normalized library sizes, equal to the original library sizes multiplied by the corresponding normalization factors, from an edgeR data object or fitted model object.

If the object contains a row-specific offsets (i.e., a non-sparse matrix of offsets), then the offsets for the first row are returned.

**Value**

A numeric matrix of effective (normalized) library sizes. If `log=TRUE`, then natural log values are returned, equal to library size offsets for a NB log-linear model.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[normLibSizes](#)

**Examples**

```
ngenes <- 100
nsamples <- 4
y <- DGEList(counts=matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nsamples,size=1,mu=10),ngenes,nsamples))
y <- normLibSizes(y)
data.frame(y$samples, eff.lib.size=getNormLibSizes(y))
```

---

getPriorN

*Get a Recommended Value for Prior N from DGEList Object*

---

**Description**

Returns the `lib.size` component of the `samples` component of `DGEList` object multiplied by the `norm.factors` component

**Usage**

```
getPriorN(y, design=NULL, prior.df=20)
```

**Arguments**

`y` a `DGEList` object with (at least) elements `counts` (table of unadjusted counts) and `samples` (data frame containing information about experimental group, library size and normalization factor for the library size)

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| design   | numeric matrix (optional argument) giving the design matrix for the GLM that is to be fit. Must be of full column rank. If provided design is used to determine the number of parameters to be fit in the statistical model and therefore the residual degrees of freedom. If left as the default (NULL) then the <code>y\$samples\$group</code> element of the <code>DGEList</code> object is used to determine the residual degrees of freedom. |
| prior.df | numeric scalar giving the weight, in terms of prior degrees of freedom, to be given to the common parameter likelihood when estimating genewise dispersion estimates.   |

## Details

When estimating genewise dispersion values using [estimateTagwiseDisp](#) or [estimateGLMTagwiseDisp](#) we need to decide how much weight to give to the common parameter likelihood in order to smooth (or stabilize) the dispersion estimates. The best choice of value for the `prior.n` parameter varies between datasets depending on the number of samples in the dataset and the complexity of the model to be fit. The value of `prior.n` should be inversely proportional to the residual degrees of freedom. We have found that choosing a value for `prior.n` that is equivalent to giving the common parameter likelihood 20 degrees of freedom generally gives a good amount of smoothing for the genewise dispersion estimates. This function simply recommends an appropriate value for `prior.n`—to be used as an argument for [estimateTagwiseDisp](#) or [estimateGLMTagwiseDisp](#)—given the experimental design at hand and the chosen prior degrees of freedom.

## Value

`getPriorN` returns a numeric scalar

## Author(s)

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

## See Also

[DGEList](#) for more information about the `DGEList` class. [as.matrix.DGEList](#).

## Examples

```
# generate raw counts from NB, create list object
y<-matrix(rnbinom(20,size=1,mu=10),nrow=5)
d<-DGEList(counts=y,group=rep(1:2,each=2),lib.size=rep(c(1000:1001),2))
getPriorN(d)
```

---

|      |                              |
|------|------------------------------|
| gini | <i>Gini dispersion index</i> |
|------|------------------------------|

---

**Description**

Gini index for each column of a matrix.

**Usage**

```
gini(x)
```

**Arguments**

`x` a non-negative numeric matrix, or an object that can be coerced to such a matrix by `as.matrix`.

**Details**

The Gini coefficient or index is a measure of inequality or diversity. It is zero if all the values of `x` are equal. It reaches a maximum value of  $1/nrow(x)$  when all values are zero except for one.

The Gini index is only interpretable for non-negative quantities. It is not meaningful if `x` contains negative values.

**Value**

Numeric vector of length `ncol(x)`.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**References**

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gini\\_coefficient](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gini_coefficient).

**Examples**

```
x <- matrix(rpois(20,lambda=5),10,2)
gini(x)
```



**Description**

Fit a negative binomial generalized log-linear model to the read counts for each gene.

**Usage**

```
## Default S3 method:
glmFit(y, design=NULL, dispersion=NULL, offset=NULL, lib.size=NULL, weights=NULL,
       prior.count=0.125, start=NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
glmFit(y, design=NULL, dispersion=NULL, prior.count=0.125, start=NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
glmFit(y, design=NULL, dispersion=NULL, prior.count=0.125, start=NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <code>y</code>           | a matrix of counts or a <code>DGEList</code> object or a <code>SummarizedExperiment</code> containing counts. Rows represent genes and columns represent samples.  |
| <code>design</code>      | numeric matrix giving the design matrix for the genewise linear models. Must be of full column rank. Defaults to a single column of ones, equivalent to treating the columns as replicate libraries.   |
| <code>dispersion</code>  | negative binomial dispersions. Can be a single value, or a vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> , or a matrix of the same size as <code>y</code> . If <code>NULL</code> , will be extracted from <code>y</code> in this order of precedence: genewise dispersion, trended dispersions, common dispersion. |
| <code>offset</code>      | offsets for the log-linear models containing log effective library sizes. Can be a single value, or a vector of length <code>ncol(y)</code> , or a matrix of the same size as <code>y</code> . If <code>NULL</code> , then will be computed by <code>getOffset(y)</code> .                                 |
| <code>lib.size</code>    | numeric vector of length <code>ncol(y)</code> giving library sizes. Only used if <code>offset=NULL</code> , in which case <code>offset</code> is set to <code>log(lib.size)</code> . Defaults to <code>colSums(y)</code> .   |
| <code>weights</code>     | positive prior weights for the GLM fits. Can be a single value, or a vector of length <code>ncol(y)</code> , or a matrix of the same size as <code>y</code> . If <code>NULL</code> , will be set to unity for all observations.  |
| <code>prior.count</code> | average prior count to be added to observation to shrink the estimated log-fold-changes towards zero.  |
| <code>start</code>       | optional numeric matrix of initial estimates for the linear model coefficients.  |
| <code>...</code>         | other arguments are passed to lower level fitting functions.   |

## Details

Implements generalized linear model (GLM) methods developed by McCarthy et al (2012). Specifically, `glmFit` fits genewise negative binomial GLMs, all with the same design matrix but possibly different dispersions, offsets and weights. When the design matrix defines a one-way layout, or can be re-parametrized to a one-way layout, the GLMs are fitting very quickly using `mg1mOneGroup`. Otherwise the default fitting method, implemented in `mg1mLevenberg`, uses a Fisher scoring algorithm with Levenberg-style damping.

Positive `prior.count` values cause the returned coefficients to be shrunk in such a way that fold-changes between the treatment conditions are decreased and infinite fold-changes are avoided (Phipson, 2013). Larger `prior.count` values cause more shrinkage. Coefficient shrinkage does not affect the likelihood ratio tests or p-values.

## Value

An object of class `DGEGLM` containing components `counts`, `samples`, `genes` and abundance from `y` plus the following new components:

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <code>design</code>                | design matrix as input.  |
| <code>weights</code>               | matrix of weights as input.  |
| <code>df.residual</code>           | numeric vector of residual degrees of freedom, one for each gene.  |
| <code>offset</code>                | numeric matrix of linear model offsets.  |
| <code>dispersion</code>            | vector of dispersions used for the fit.  |
| <code>coefficients</code>          | numeric matrix of estimated coefficients from the glm fits. Coefficients are on the natural log scale. Matrix has dimensions <code>nrow(y)</code> by <code>ncol(design)</code> .   |
| <code>unshrunk.coefficients</code> | numeric matrix of estimated coefficients from the glm fits when no log-fold-changes shrinkage is applied, on the natural log scale, of size <code>nrow(y)</code> by <code>ncol(design)</code> . It exists only when <code>prior.count</code> is not 0. |
| <code>fitted.values</code>         | matrix of fitted values from glm fits, same number of rows and columns as <code>y</code> .   |
| <code>deviance</code>              | numeric vector of deviances, one for each gene.  |

## Author(s)

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen, Aaron Lun

## References

- McCarthy DJ, Chen Y, Smyth GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)
- Phipson B (2013). Empirical bayes modelling of expression profiles and their associations. Ph.D. thesis, Department of Mathematics and Statistics, The University of Melbourne. <http://hdl.handle.net/11343/38162>.
- Chen Y, Chen L, Lun ATL, Baldoni PL, Smyth GK (2024). edgeR 4.0: powerful differential analysis of sequencing data with expanded functionality and improved support for small counts and larger datasets. *bioRxiv* 2024.01.21.576131. [doi:10.1101/2024.01.21.576131](https://doi.org/10.1101/2024.01.21.576131)

**See Also**

Low-level computations are done by [mg1mOneGroup](#) or [mg1mLevenberg](#).

[topTags](#) displays results from glmLRT.

**Examples**

```
nlibs <- 3
ngenes <- 100
dispersion.true <- 0.1

# Make first gene respond to covariate x
x <- 0:2
design <- model.matrix(~x)
beta.true <- cbind(Beta1=2,Beta2=c(2,rep(0,ngenes-1)))
mu.true <- 2^(beta.true %*% t(design))

# Generate count data
y <- rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs,mu=mu.true,size=1/dispersion.true)
y <- matrix(y,ngenes,nlibs)
colnames(y) <- c("x0","x1","x2")
rownames(y) <- paste("gene",1:ngenes,sep=".")
d <- DGEList(y)

# Normalize
d <- normLibSizes(d)

# Fit the NB GLMs
fit <- glmFit(d, design, dispersion=dispersion.true)

# Likelihood ratio tests for trend
results <- glmLRT(fit, coef=2)
topTags(results)
```

---

glmLRT

*Genewise Likelihood Ratio Tests*

---

**Description**

Given genewise generalized linear model fits, conduct likelihood ratio tests for a given coefficient or coefficient contrast.

**Usage**

```
glmLRT(glmfit, coef=ncol(glmfit$design), contrast=NULL)
```

**Arguments**

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| glmfit   | a DGEGLM object, usually output from glmFit.   |
| coef     | integer or character vector indicating which coefficients of the linear model are to be tested equal to zero. Values must be columns or column names of design. Defaults to the last coefficient. Ignored if contrast is specified.                        |
| contrast | numeric vector or matrix specifying one or more contrasts of the linear model coefficients to be tested equal to zero. If a matrix, then rows correspond to the columns of design and columns are contrasts. If non-NULL, then takes precedence over coef. |

**Details**

Using genewise GLMs from glmFit, glmLRT conducts likelihood ratio tests for one or more coefficients in the linear model. If contrast is NULL, the null hypothesis is that all the coefficients specified by coef are equal to zero. If contrast is non-NULL, then the null hypothesis is that the specified contrasts of the coefficients are equal to zero. For example, contrast = c(0, 1, -1), assuming there are three coefficients, would test the hypothesis that the second and third coefficients are equal. If contrast is a matrix, then each column is a contrast and the null hypothesis is that all the contrasts are equal to zero.

**Value**

An object of class DGELRT with the same components as for glmFit plus the following:

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| table      | data frame with the same rows as y containing the log2-fold-changes, likelihood ratio statistics and p-values, ready to be displayed by topTags. |
| comparison | character string describing the coefficient or the contrast being tested.  |

The data frame table contains the following columns:

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| logFC  | log2-fold change of expression between conditions being tested.             |
| logCPM | average log2-counts per million, the average taken over all libraries in y. |
| LR     | likelihood ratio statistics.  |
| PValue | p-values.   |

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth, Davis McCarthy, Yunshun Chen

**References**

McCarthy DJ, Chen Y, Smyth GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. doi:10.1093/nar/gks042

**See Also**

[glmFit](#) fits the genewise GLMs that are input to glmLRT.

[topTags](#) displays results from glmLRT.

**Examples**

```
# See glmFit for an example that includes glmLRT
```

---

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| glmQLFit | <i>Genewise Negative Binomial Generalized Linear Models with Quasi-Dispersion Estimation</i> |
|----------|--|

---

**Description**

Fit a negative binomial generalized log-linear model to the read counts for each gene. Estimate the genewise quasi-dispersions with empirical Bayes moderation.

**Usage**

```
## Default S3 method:
glmQLFit(y, design = NULL, dispersion = NULL, offset = NULL, lib.size = NULL,
         weights = NULL, abundance.trend = TRUE, AveLogCPM = NULL,
         covariate.trend = NULL, robust = FALSE, winsor.tail.p = c(0.05, 0.1),
         legacy = FALSE, top.proportion = NULL, keep.unit.mat=FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
glmQLFit(y, design = NULL, dispersion = NULL, abundance.trend = TRUE,
         robust = FALSE, winsor.tail.p = c(0.05, 0.1),
         legacy = FALSE, top.proportion = NULL, keep.unit.mat=FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
glmQLFit(y, design = NULL, dispersion = NULL, abundance.trend = TRUE,
         robust = FALSE, winsor.tail.p = c(0.05, 0.1),
         legacy = FALSE, top.proportion = NULL, keep.unit.mat=FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| y          | a matrix of counts or a DGEList object or a SummarizedExperiment containing counts. Rows represent genes and columns represent samples.   |
| design     | numeric matrix giving the design matrix for the genewise linear models. Must be of full column rank. Defaults to a single column of ones, equivalent to treating the columns as replicate libraries.  |
| dispersion | negative binomial dispersions. Can be a single value, or a vector of length nrow(y), or a matrix of the same size as y. If NULL and legacy=TRUE, then will be extracted from the DGEList object y. The trended dispersions will be extracted if present, otherwise common dispersion, or will be set to 0.05 if neither is present. If NULL and legacy=FALSE, then will be estimated using the top.proportion of most highly expressed genes. |
| offset     | offsets for the log-linear models containing log effective library sizes. Can be a single value, or a vector of length ncol(y), or a matrix of the same size as y. If NULL, then will be computed by getOffset(y).  |
| lib.size   | numeric vector of length ncol(y) giving library sizes. Only used if offset=NULL, in which case offset is set to log(lib.size). Defaults to colSums(y).  |

|                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| <code>weights</code>         | positive prior weights for the GLM fits. Can be a single value, or a vector of length <code>ncol(y)</code> , or a matrix of the same size as <code>y</code> . If <code>NULL</code> , will be set to unity for all observations.   |
| <code>abundance.trend</code> | logical, whether to allow an abundance trend for the quasi-dispersion prior.  |
| <code>AveLogCPM</code>       | numeric vector giving average log2-counts per million for each row of <code>y</code> . If <code>NULL</code> , then will be computed by <code>aveLogCPM(y)</code> .  |
| <code>covariate.trend</code> | numeric vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> . If non- <code>NULL</code> , then will be used instead of <code>AveLogCPM</code> as the covariate for the trended quasi-dispersion prior.  |
| <code>robust</code>          | logical, whether to estimate the prior distribution for the quasi-dispersions robustly.   |
| <code>winsor.tail.p</code>   | numeric vector of length 2 giving proportion to trim (Winsorize) from lower and upper tail of the distribution of genewise deviances when estimating the hyperparameters of the quasi-dispersion prior. Used as input to <code>squeezeVar</code> when <code>robust=TRUE</code> .            |
| <code>legacy</code>          | logical, if <code>TRUE</code> then produce legacy results as for Bioconductor 3.16 and earlier. If <code>FALSE</code> , then use the new quasi-dispersion estimation method with adjusted deviances.  |
| <code>top.proportion</code>  | the proportion of top highly expressed genes used to get an initial estimate of the NB dispersion. Only used when <code>legacy=TRUE</code> and <code>dispersion=NULL</code> . Defaults to a value chosen depending on the number of genes and the residual degrees of freedom, see Details. |
| <code>keep.unit.mat</code>   | logical, whether to compute the matrice of adjusted unit deviances, degrees of freedom and leverage.  |
| <code>...</code>             | other arguments are passed to <code>glmFit</code> .   |

## Details

`glmQLFit` and `glmQLFTest` implement the quasi-likelihood (QL) methods of Lund et al (2012) with some enhancements and with slightly different `glm`, `trend` and `FDR` methods. See Lun et al (2016) or Chen et al (2016) for tutorials describing the use of `glmQLFit` and `glmQLFTest` as part of a complete analysis pipeline. Another case study using `glmQLFit` and `glmQLFTest` is given in Section 4.7 of the edgeR User's Guide.

`glmQLFit` is similar to `glmFit` except that it also estimates a quasi-dispersion (quasi-dispersion) for each gene. It calls the `limma` function `squeezeVar` to conduct empirical Bayes moderation of the genewise quasi-dispersions. If `robust=TRUE`, then the robust hyperparameter estimation features of `squeezeVar` are used (Phipson et al, 2016). If `abundance.trend=TRUE`, then a prior trend is estimated based on the average logCPMs. If `covariate.trend=TRUE` is not `NULL`, then a prior trend is estimated using the `covariate.trend` values as predictors.

`glmQLFit` gives special attention to handling of small counts and zero counts. When `legacy=TRUE`, the function uses the method of Lun and Smyth (2017) to adjust the residual degrees of freedom when fitted values of zero provide no useful residual degrees of freedom for estimating the quasi-dispersion. The usual residual degrees of freedom are returned as `df.residual` while the adjusted residual degrees of freedom are returned as `df.residuals.zeros`.

If `legacy=FALSE`, then a more comprehensive adjustment for small counts is used. The new method adjusts both the residual deviances and the residual degrees of freedom to improve the accuracy of the quasi-dispersion estimates even for very small counts (Chen et al 2024). With this new method, the residual deviance is no longer equal to the usual residual deviance from generalized linear model theory and the residual degrees of freedom are no longer integers. With the new method, the `glmQLFTest` function should give good error rate control even for data with many small counts. The `legacy=FALSE` method was introduced in edgeR 4.0.0 with the Bioconductor 3.18 release. Setting `legacy=TRUE` will reproduce earlier results as for edgeR 3.8.0 and Bioconductor 3.16.

`glmQLFit` requires the NB dispersion to be pre-specified when `legacy=TRUE` but not when `legacy=FALSE`. In the new pipeline, the NB dispersion will be automatically estimated by `glmQLFit` whenever `dispersion=NULL`. In that case, the NB-dispersion will be estimated as the common dispersion of the top `top.proportion` of genes by `AveLogCPM`. The default value for `top.proportion` is `chooseLowessSpan(ngenes*sqrt(df.residual), small.n=20, min.span=0.02)`, where `ngenes` is the number of genes (rows of `y`) and `df.residual` is the residual degrees of freedom, equal to `ncol(y)-ncol(design)`.

## Value

`glmQLFit` with `legacy=TRUE` produces an object of class `DGEGLM` with the same components as produced by `glmFit`, plus:

`df.residual.zeros` numeric vector of effective residual degrees of freedom for each gene, after accounting for treatment groups with all zero counts.

`df.prior` numeric vector of prior degrees of freedom for the quasi-dispersions. Has length `nrow(y)` if `robust=TRUE`, otherwise length 1.

`s2.prior` numeric vector giving prior value for the quasi-dispersions. Has length `nrow(y)` if `abundance.trend=TRUE`, otherwise length 1.

`s2.post` numeric vector of posterior genewise quasi-dispersions.

`glmQLFit` with `legacy=FALSE` produces an object of class `DGEGLM` with the same components as produced by `glmFit`, plus:

`leverage` numeric matrix of leverages for the genewise glms when `keep.unit.mat=TRUE`.

`unit.deviance.adj` numeric matrix of adjusted unit deviances for the genewise glms when `keep.unit.mat=TRUE`.

`unit.df.adj` numeric matrix of adjusted degrees of freedom for the unit deviances when `keep.unit.mat=TRUE`.

`df.residual.adj` numeric vector of adjusted residual degrees of freedom for each gene.

`df.prior` numeric vector of prior degrees of freedom for the quasi-dispersions. Has length `nrow(y)` if `robust=TRUE`, otherwise length 1.

`s2.prior` numeric vector giving prior value the quasi-dispersions. Has length `nrow(y)` if `abundance.trend=TRUE`, otherwise length 1.

`s2.post` numeric vector of posterior genewise quasi-dispersions.

`average.q1.dispersion` average quasi-dispersion, used to scale the NB dispersion after estimating the quasi-dispersions.

**Note**

The negative binomial dispersion supplied to `glmQLFit` must be based on a global model, that is, they must be either trended or common dispersions. It is not correct to supply gene-wise dispersions because `glmQLFit` estimates gene-specific variability using the quasi-dispersions.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen, Aaron Lun, Davis McCarthy, Lizhong Chen and Gordon Smyth

**References**

- Chen Y, Chen L, Lun ATL, Baldoni PL, Smyth GK (2024). edgeR 4.0: powerful differential analysis of sequencing data with expanded functionality and improved support for small counts and larger datasets. *bioRxiv* 2024.01.21.576131. doi:10.1101/2024.01.21.576131
- Chen Y, Lun ATL, Smyth GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using Rsubread and the edgeR quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438. doi:10.12688/f1000research.8987.2
- Lun, ATL, Chen, Y, and Smyth, GK (2016). It's DE-licious: a recipe for differential expression analyses of RNA-seq experiments using quasi-likelihood methods in edgeR. *Methods in Molecular Biology* 1418, 391-416. doi:10.1007/9781493935789\_19 <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/QLedgeRPreprint.pdf> (Preprint 8 April 2015)
- Lund, SP, Nettleton, D, McCarthy, DJ, and Smyth, GK (2012). Detecting differential expression in RNA-sequence data using quasi-likelihood with shrunken dispersion estimates. *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* Volume 11, Issue 5, Article 8. doi:10.1515/15446115.1826 <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/QuasiSeqPreprint.pdf>
- Lun, ATL, and Smyth, GK (2017). No counts, no variance: allowing for loss of degrees of freedom when assessing biological variability from RNA-seq data. *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* 16(2), 83-93. doi:10.1515/sagmb20170010
- Phipson, B, Lee, S, Majewski, IJ, Alexander, WS, and Smyth, GK (2016). Robust hyperparameter estimation protects against hypervariable genes and improves power to detect differential expression. *Annals of Applied Statistics* 10, 946-963. doi:10.1214/16AOAS920

**See Also**

`glmQLFTest` performs F-tests using the fit from `glmQLFit`.

`plotQLDisp` can be used to visualize the distribution of quasi-dispersions after EB shrinkage from `glmQLFit`.

The `QuasiSeq` package gives an alternative implementation of the Lund et al (2012) methods.

**Examples**

```
nlibs <- 4
ngenes <- 1000
dispersion.true <- 1/rchisq(ngenes, df=10)
design <- model.matrix(~factor(c(1,1,2,2)))

# Generate count data
```



```

y <- rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs,mu=20,size=1/dispersion.true)
y <- matrix(y,ngenes,nlibs)
d <- DGEList(y)
d <- normLibSizes(d)

# Fit the NB GLMs with QL methods
d <- estimateDisp(d, design)
fit <- glmQLFit(d, design)
results <- glmQLFTest(fit)
topTags(results)
fit <- glmQLFit(d, design, robust=TRUE)
results <- glmQLFTest(fit)
topTags(results)
fit <- glmQLFit(d, design, abundance.trend=FALSE)
results <- glmQLFTest(fit)
topTags(results)

```

---

glmQLFTest

*Quasi-Likelihood F-Tests*


---

### Description

Conduct genewise quasi F-tests for a given coefficient or coefficient contrast.

### Usage

```

glmQLFTest(glmfit, coef = ncol(glmfit$design), contrast = NULL,
           poisson.bound = TRUE)

```

### Arguments

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| glmfit        | a DGEGLM object, usually output from glmQLFit.  |
| coef          | integer or character index vector indicating which coefficients of the linear model are to be tested equal to zero. Ignored if contrast is not NULL.  |
| contrast      | numeric vector or matrix specifying one or more contrasts of the linear model coefficients to be tested equal to zero.  |
| poisson.bound | logical, if TRUE then the p-value returned will never be less than would be obtained for a likelihood ratio test with NB-dispersion equal to 0 and quasi-dispersion equal to 1. Only uses when legacy=TRUE. |

### Details

glmQLFTest is typically used after [glmQLFit](#). The two functions implement the quasi-likelihood (QL) methods of Lund et al (2012) with some enhancements and with slightly different GLM, trend and FDR methods. See Lun et al (2016) or Chen et al (2016) for tutorials describing the use of glmQLFit and glmQLFTest as part of a complete analysis pipeline. Another case study using glmQLFit and glmQLFTest is given in Section 4.7 of the edgeR User's Guide.

glmQLFTest is similar to glmLRT except that it replaces likelihood ratio tests with empirical Bayes quasi-likelihood F-tests. The p-values from glmQLFTest are always greater than or equal to those that would be obtained from glmLRT using the same negative binomial dispersions.

### Value

An object of class DGELRT with the same components as produced by glmLRT, except that the `table$LR` column becomes `table$F` and contains quasi-likelihood F-statistics. It also stores `df.total`, a numeric vector containing the denominator degrees of freedom for the F-test, equal to `df.prior + df.residual.zeros`.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Aaron Lun, Davis McCarthy, Lizhong Chen and Gordon Smyth

### References

Chen Y, Lun ATL, Smyth GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using Rsubread and the edgeR quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438. doi:10.12688/f1000research.8987.2

Lun, ATL, Chen, Y, and Smyth, GK (2016). It's DE-licious: a recipe for differential expression analyses of RNA-seq experiments using quasi-likelihood methods in edgeR. *Methods in Molecular Biology* 1418, 391-416. doi:10.1007/9781493935789\_19 <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/QLedgeRPreprint.pdf> (Preprint 8 April 2015)

Lund, SP, Nettleton, D, McCarthy, DJ, and Smyth, GK (2012). Detecting differential expression in RNA-sequence data using quasi-likelihood with shrunken dispersion estimates. *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* Volume 11, Issue 5, Article 8. doi:10.1515/15446115.1826 <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/QuasiSeqPreprint.pdf>

Lun, ATL, and Smyth, GK (2017). No counts, no variance: allowing for loss of degrees of freedom when assessing biological variability from RNA-seq data. *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* 16(2), 83-93. doi:10.1515/sagmb20170010

Phipson, B, Lee, S, Majewski, IJ, Alexander, WS, and Smyth, GK (2016). Robust hyperparameter estimation protects against hypervariable genes and improves power to detect differential expression. *Annals of Applied Statistics* 10, 946-963. doi:10.1214/16AOAS920

### See Also

[glmQLFit](#) provides estimated GLMs to glmQLFTest.

[topTags](#) displays results from glmQLFTest.

[plotQLDisp](#) can be used to visualize the distribution of quasi-dispersions after EB shrinkage from glmQLFit.

The QuasiSeq package gives an alternative implementation of the Lund et al (2012) methods.

### Examples

```
# See glmQLFit for an example using glmQLFTest
```

glmTreat

*Test for Differential Expression Relative to a Threshold***Description**

Conduct genewise statistical tests for a given coefficient or contrast relative to a specified fold-change threshold.

**Usage**

```
glmTreat(glmfit, coef = ncol(glmfit$design), contrast = NULL, lfc = log2(1.2),
         null = "interval")
```

**Arguments**

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| glmfit   | a DGEGLM object, usually output from glmFit or glmQLFit.  |
| coef     | integer or character vector indicating which coefficients of the linear model are to be tested equal to zero. Values must be columns or column names of design. Defaults to the last coefficient. Ignored if contrast is specified.   |
| contrast | numeric vector specifying the contrast of the linear model coefficients to be tested against the log2-fold-change threshold. Length must equal to the number of columns of design. If specified, then takes precedence over coef.   |
| lfc      | numeric scalar specifying the absolute value of the log2-fold change threshold above which differential expression is to be considered.   |
| null     | character string, choices are "worst.case" or "interval". If "worst.case", then the null hypothesis assumes that the true logFC is on the boundary of the possible values, either at lfc or -lfc, whichever gives the largest p-value. This gives the most conservative results. If "interval", then the null hypotheses assumes the true logFC to belong to a bounded interval of possible values. |

**Details**

glmTreat implements a test for differential expression relative to a minimum required fold-change threshold. Instead of testing for genes which have log-fold-changes different from zero, it tests whether the log2-fold-change is greater than lfc in absolute value. glmTreat is analogous to the TREAT approach developed by McCarthy and Smyth (2009) for microarrays.

Note that the lfc testing threshold used to define the null hypothesis is not the same as a log2-fold-change cutoff, as the observed log2-fold-change needs to be substantially larger than lfc for the gene to be called as significant. In practice, modest values for lfc such as  $\log_2(1.1)$ ,  $\log_2(1.2)$  or  $\log_2(1.5)$  are usually the most useful. In practice, setting  $\text{lfc}=\log_2(1.2)$  or  $\text{lfc}=\log_2(1.5)$  will usually cause most differentially expressed genes to have estimated fold-changes of 2-fold or greater, depending on the sample size and precision of the experiment.

Note also that glmTreat constructs test statistics using the unshrunk log2-fold-changes (unshrunk.logFC) rather than the log2-fold-changes that are usually reported (logFC). If no shrinkage has been applied

to the log-fold-changes, i.e., the glms were fitted with `prior.count=0`, then `unshrunk.logFC` and `logFC` are the same and the former is omitted from the output object.

`glmTreat` detects whether `glmfit` was produced by `glmFit` or `glmQLFit`. In the former case, it conducts a modified likelihood ratio test (LRT) against the fold-change threshold. In the latter case, it conducts a quasi-likelihood (QL) F-test against the threshold.

If `lfc=0`, then `glmTreat` is equivalent to `glmLRT` or `glmQLFTest`, depending on whether likelihood or quasi-likelihood is being used.

`glmTreat` with positive `lfc` gives larger p-values than would be obtained with `lfc=0`. If `null="worst.case"`, then `glmTreat` conducts a test closely analogous to the `treat` function in the `limma` package. This conducts a test if which the null hypothesis puts the true `logFC` on the boundary of the `[-lfc, lfc]` interval closest to the observed `logFC`. If `null="interval"`, then the null hypotheses assumes an interval of possible values for the true `logFC`. This approach is somewhat less conservative.

Note that, unlike other edgeR functions such as `glmLRT` and `glmQLFTest`, `glmTreat` can only accept a single contrast. If `contrast` is a matrix with multiple columns, then only the first column will be used.

## Value

`glmTreat` produces an object of class `DGELRT` with the same components as for `glmfit` plus the following:

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>lfc</code>        | absolute value of the specified log <sub>2</sub> -fold-change threshold.   |
| <code>table</code>      | data frame with the same rows as <code>glmfit</code> containing the log <sub>2</sub> -fold-changes, average log <sub>2</sub> -counts per million and p-values, ready to be displayed by <code>topTags</code> . |
| <code>comparison</code> | character string describing the coefficient or the contrast being tested.  |

The data frame `table` contains the following columns:

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>logFC</code>          | shrunk log <sub>2</sub> -fold-change of expression between conditions being tested.   |
| <code>unshrunk.logFC</code> | unshrunk log <sub>2</sub> -fold-change of expression between conditions being tested. Exists only when <code>prior.count</code> is not equal to 0 for <code>glmfit</code> . |
| <code>logCPM</code>         | average log <sub>2</sub> -counts per million, the average taken over all libraries.   |
| <code>PValue</code>         | p-values.   |

## Note

`glmTreat` was previously called `treatDGE` in edgeR versions 3.9.10 and earlier.

## Author(s)

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

## References

McCarthy, D. J., and Smyth, G. K. (2009). Testing significance relative to a fold-change threshold is a TREAT. *Bioinformatics* 25, 765-771. doi:10.1093/bioinformatics/btp053

**See Also**

[topTags](#) displays results from `glmTreat`.

[treat](#) is the corresponding function in the `limma` package, designed for use with normally distributed log-expression data rather than for negative binomial counts.

**Examples**

```
ngenes <- 100
n1 <- 3
n2 <- 3
nlibs <- n1+n2
mu <- 100
phi <- 0.1
group <- c(rep(1,n1), rep(2,n2))
design <- model.matrix(~as.factor(group))

### 4-fold change for the first 5 genes
i <- 1:5
fc <- 4
mu <- matrix(mu, ngenes, nlibs)
mu[i, 1:n1] <- mu[i, 1:n1]*fc

counts <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs, mu=mu, size=1/phi), ngenes, nlibs)
d <- DGEList(counts=counts, lib.size=rep(1e6, nlibs), group=group)

gfit <- glmFit(d, design, dispersion=phi)
tr <- glmTreat(gfit, coef=2, lfc=1)
topTags(tr)
```

---

goana.DGELRT

*Gene Ontology or KEGG Analysis of Differentially Expressed Genes*

---

**Description**

Test for over-representation of gene ontology (GO) terms or KEGG pathways in the up and down differentially expressed genes from a linear model fit.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGELRT'
goana(de, geneid = rownames(de), FDR = 0.05, trend = FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGELRT'
kegga(de, geneid = rownames(de), FDR = 0.05, trend = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| de     | an DGELRT or DGEEexact object.   |
| geneid | gene IDs. Either a character vector of length nrow(de) or the name of the column of de\$genes containing the Gene IDs.   |
| FDR    | false discovery rate cutoff for differentially expressed genes. Numeric value between 0 and 1.   |
| trend  | adjust analysis for gene length or abundance? Can be logical, or a numeric vector of covariate values, or the name of the column of de\$genes containing the covariate values. If TRUE, then de\$AveLogCPM is used as the covariate. |
| ...    | any other arguments are passed to <a href="#">goana.default</a> or <a href="#">kegga.default</a> .   |

**Details**

goana performs Gene Ontology enrichment analyses for the up and down differentially expressed genes from a linear model analysis. kegga performs the corresponding analysis for KEGG pathways.

The argument de should be a fitted model object created by glmLRT, glmTreat, glmQLFTest or exactTest.

For goana, the gene IDs must be Entrez Gene IDs. These can be supplied either as row.names of de or as a column of de\$genes. In the latter case, the column name containing the Entrez IDs is given by geneid. Alternatively, if the Entrez IDs are not part of the de object, then they can be supplied as a vector argument to geneid.

For kegga, gene IDs other than Entrez Gene IDs are supported for some species. See [kegga.default](#) for more information.

If trend=FALSE, the function computes one-sided hypergeometric tests equivalent to Fisher's exact test.

If trend=TRUE or a covariate is supplied, then a trend is fitted to the differential expression results and the method of Young et al (2010) is used to adjust for this trend. The adjusted test uses Wallenius' noncentral hypergeometric distribution.

**Value**

goana produces a data.frame with a row for each GO term and the following columns:

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| Term   | GO term.   |
| Ont    | ontology that the GO term belongs to. Possible values are "BP", "CC" and "MF". |
| N      | Number of genes in the GO term.  |
| Up     | number of up-regulated differentially expressed genes.                         |
| Down   | number of down-regulated differentially expressed genes.                       |
| P.Up   | p-value for over-representation of GO term in up-regulated genes.              |
| P.Down | p-value for over-representation of GO term in down-regulated genes.            |

The row names of the data frame give the GO term IDs.

kegga produces a data.frame as above except that the rownames are KEGG pathway IDs, Term become Path and there is no Ont column.

**Note**

This is the help page for goana when de is an edgeR fitted model object. See ?goana for other possible input types.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

**References**

Chen Y, Lun ATL, and Smyth, GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using Rsubread and the edgeR quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438. <https://f1000research.com/articles/5-1438>

Young, M. D., Wakefield, M. J., Smyth, G. K., Oshlack, A. (2010). Gene ontology analysis for RNA-seq: accounting for selection bias. *Genome Biology* 11, R14. [doi:10.1186/gb2010112r14](https://doi.org/10.1186/gb2010112r14)

**See Also**

[goana](#), [topGO](#), [kegga](#), [topKEGG](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
fit <- glmFit(y, design)
lrt <- glmLRT(fit)
go <- goana(lrt, species="Hs")
topGO(go, ont="BP", sort="up")
topGO(go, ont="BP", sort="down")
## End(Not run)
```

---

gof

*Goodness of Fit Tests for Multiple GLM Fits*

---

**Description**

Conducts deviance goodness of fit tests for each fit in a DGEGLM object

**Usage**

```
gof(glmfit, pcutoff = 0.1, adjust = "holm", plot = FALSE,
     main = "qq-plot of residual deviances", ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <code>glmfit</code>   | a DGEGLM object containing results from fitting NB GLMs to genes in a DGE dataset with a global dispersion model. Usually this is output from <code>glmFit</code> .      |
| <code>p cutoff</code> | scalar giving the cut-off value for the Holm-adjusted p-value. Genes with Holm-adjusted p-values lower than this cutoff value are flagged as ‘dispersion outlier’ genes. |
| <code>adjust</code>   | method used to adjust goodness of fit p-values for multiple testing.   |
| <code>plot</code>     | logical, if TRUE a qq-plot is produced.  |
| <code>main</code>     | character, title for the plot.   |
| <code>...</code>      | other arguments are passed to <code>qqnorm</code> .  |

**Details**

This function is useful for evaluating the adequacy of a global dispersion model, such as a constant or trended dispersion. If `plot=TRUE`, then it produces a qq-plot similar to those in Figure 2 of McCarthy et al (2012).

**Value**

A list with the following components:

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>gof.statistics</code> | numeric vector of deviance statistics, which are the statistics used for the goodness of fit test   |
| <code>gof.pvalues</code>    | numeric vector of p-values providing evidence of poor fit; computed from the chi-square distribution on the residual degrees of freedom from the GLM fits.  |
| <code>outlier</code>        | logical vector indicating whether or not each gene is a ‘dispersion outlier’ (i.e., the model fit is poor for that gene indicating that the dispersion estimate is not good for that gene).   |
| <code>df</code>             | scalar, the residual degrees of freedom from the GLM fit for which the goodness of fit statistics have been computed. Also the degrees of freedom for the goodness of fit statistics for the LR (chi-square) test for significance. |

If `plot=TRUE`, then a plot is also produced on the current graphics device.

**Note**

This function should not be used with tagwise estimated dispersions such as those from `estimateGLMTagwiseDisp` or `estimateDisp`. `glmfit` should contain trended or constant dispersions.

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy and Gordon Smyth

**References**

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297 doi:10.1093/nar/gks042



**See Also**[qqnorm](#).[glmFit](#) for more information on fitting NB GLMs to DGE data.**Examples**

```

nlibs <- 3
ngenes <- 100
dispersion.true <- 0.1

# Make first gene respond to covariate x
x <- 0:2
design <- model.matrix(~x)
beta.true <- cbind(Beta1=2,Beta2=c(2,rep(0,ngenes-1)))
mu.true <- 2^(beta.true %*% t(design))

# Generate count data
y <- rnbinom(ngenes*nlibs,mu=mu.true,size=1/dispersion.true)
y <- matrix(y,ngenes,nlibs)
colnames(y) <- c("x0","x1","x2")
rownames(y) <- paste("gene",1:ngenes,sep=".")
d <- DGEList(y)

# Normalize
d <- normLibSizes(d)

# Fit the NB GLMs
fit <- glmFit(d, design, dispersion=dispersion.true)
# Check how good the fit is for each gene
gof(fit)

```

---

`goodTuring`*Good-Turing Frequency Estimation*

---

**Description**

Non-parametric empirical Bayes estimates of the frequencies of observed (and unobserved) species.

**Usage**

```

goodTuring(x, conf=1.96)
goodTuringPlot(x)
goodTuringProportions(counts)

```

**Arguments**

`x` numeric vector of non-negative integers, representing the observed frequency of each species.

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| conf   | confidence factor, as a quantile of the standard normal distribution, used to decide for what values the log-linear relationship between frequencies and frequencies of frequencies is acceptable. |
| counts | matrix of counts   |

### Details

Observed counts are assumed to be Poisson distributed. Using a non-parametric empirical Bayes strategy, the algorithm evaluates the posterior expectation of each species mean given its observed count. The posterior means are then converted to proportions. In the empirical Bayes step, the counts are smoothed by assuming a log-linear relationship between frequencies and frequencies of frequencies. The fundamentals of the algorithm are from Good (1953). Gale and Sampson (1995) proposed a simplified algorithm with a rule for switching between the observed and smoothed frequencies, and it is Gale and Sampson's simplified algorithm that is implemented here. The number of zero values in  $x$  is not used as part of the algorithm, but is returned by this function.

Sampson gives a C code version on his webpage at <http://www.grsampson.net/RGoodTur.html> which gives identical results to this function.

`goodTuringPlot` plots log-probability (i.e., log frequencies of frequencies) versus log-frequency.

`goodTuringProportions` runs `goodTuring` on each column of data, then uses the results to predict the proportion of each gene in each library.

### Value

`goodTuring` returns a list with components

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| count      | observed frequencies, i.e., the unique positive values of $x$ |
| n          | frequencies of frequencies                                    |
| n0         | frequency of zero, i.e., number of zeros found in $x$         |
| proportion | estimated proportion of each species given its count          |
| P0         | estimated combined proportion of all undetected species       |

`goodTuringProportions` returns a matrix of proportions of the same size as `counts`.

### Author(s)

Aaron Lun and Gordon Smyth, adapted from Sampson's C code from <http://www.grsampson.net/RGoodTur.html>

### References

Gale, WA, and Sampson, G (1995). Good-Turing frequency estimation without tears. *Journal of Quantitative Linguistics* 2, 217-237.

Good, IJ (1953). The population frequencies of species and the estimation of population parameters. *Biometrika* 40, 237-264.

**Examples**

```
# True means of observed species
lambda <- rnbinom(10000, mu=2, size=1/10)
lambda <- lambda[lambda>1]

# Observed frequencies
Ntrue <- length(lambda)
x <- rpois(Ntrue, lambda=lambda)
freq <- goodTuring(x)
goodTuringPlot(x)
```

---

head *Return the First to Last Part of a Data Object*

---

**Description**

Retrieve the first or last parts of a DGEList, DGEEExact, DGEGLM, DGELRT or TopTags object.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
head(x, n = 6L, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
tail(x, n = 6L, ...)
```

**Arguments**

**x** an object of class DGEList, DGEEExact, DGEGLM, DGELRT or TopTags.  
**n** a single integer. If positive or zero, number rows of resulting object. If negative, all but the *n* last/first rows of *x*.  
**...** other arguments are not currently used.

**Details**

head (tail) returns the first (last) *n* rows when  $n \geq 0$  or all but the last (first) *n* rows when  $n < 0$ .

**Value**

An object like *x* but generally with fewer rows.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[head](#) in the utils package or [head.EList](#) in the limma package.

**Examples**

```
Counts <- matrix(rpois(40,lambda=10),20,2)
rownames(Counts) <- paste0("Gene",1:20)
colnames(Counts) <- c("A","B")
y <- DGEList(Counts)
head(y)
tail(y)
```

---

loessByCol

*Locally Weighted Mean By Column*


---

**Description**

Smooth columns of matrix by non-robust loess curves of degree 0.

**Usage**

```
loessByCol(y, x=NULL, span=0.5)
locfitByCol(y, x=NULL, weights=1, span=0.5, degree=0)
```

**Arguments**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| y       | numeric matrix of response variables.   |
| x       | numeric covariate vector of length nrow(y), defaults to equally spaced.                                       |
| span    | width of the smoothing window, in terms of proportion of the data set. Larger values produce smoother curves. |
| weights | relative weights of each observation, one for each covariate value.   |
| degree  | degree of local polynomial fit  |

**Details**

Fits a loess curve with degree 0 to each column of the response matrix, using the same covariate vector for each column. The smoothed column values are tricube-weighted means of the original values.

locfitByCol uses the locfit.raw function of the locfit package.

**Value**

A list containing a numeric matrix with smoothed columns and a vector of leverages for each covariate value.

locfitByCol returns a numeric matrix.

**Author(s)**

Aaron Lun for loessByCol, replacing earlier R code by Davis McCarthy. Gordon Smyth for locfitByCol.

**See Also**[loess](#)**Examples**

```

y <- matrix(rnorm(100*3), nrow=100, ncol=3)
head(y)
out <- loessByCol(y)
head(out$fitted.values)

```

---

makeCompressedMatrix *Make a CompressedMatrix*

---

**Description**

Construct a CompressedMatrix object from a scalar, vector or matrix.

**Usage**

```

makeCompressedMatrix(x, dims = NULL, byrow = TRUE)

## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
dim(x)
## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
length(x)

## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
x[i, j, drop=TRUE]
## S3 replacement method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
x[i, j] <- value

## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
Ops(e1, e2)

## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
rbind(...)
## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
cbind(...)

## S3 method for class 'CompressedMatrix'
as.matrix(x, ...)

```

**Arguments**

**x** For makeCompressedMatrix, a scalar, vector, matrix or CompressedMatrix object. For the S3 methods, a CompressedMatrix object.

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>dims</code>   | integer vector of length 2 giving matrix dimensions, ignored if <code>x</code> is already a matrix   |
| <code>byrow</code>  | logical. If <code>x</code> is a vector, should it be repeated across rows (default) or across columns?   |
| <code>i, j</code>   | subset indices to apply to <code>x</code> , which behave the same as indices for <code>matrix</code> subsetting  |
| <code>drop</code>   | logical, indicating whether or not to drop dimensions when subsetting to a single row/column   |
| <code>value</code>  | an array-like object or vector to be used to replace values in <code>x</code>  |
| <code>e1, e2</code> | a <code>CompressedMatrix</code> object   |
| <code>...</code>    | multiple <code>CompressedMatrix</code> objects for <code>rbind</code> and <code>cbind</code> . Otherwise additional arguments that are ignored in <code>as.matrix</code> . |

### Details

`CompressedMatrix` objects are used throughout `edgeR` to save space in storing offsets and (to a lesser extent) weights. This is because, for routine analyses, offsets are the same for all genes so it makes little sense to expand it to the full dimensions of the count matrix. Most functions will accept a `CompressedMatrix` as input to `offset` or `weights` arguments.

### Value

A object of class `CompressedMatrix`, containing `x` and the additional attributes `repeat.row` and `repeat.col`.

### Class construction

The `makeCompressedMatrix` function creates a `CompressedMatrix` object from `x`. The `CompressedMatrix` class inherits from a `matrix` and holds two logical scalar attributes `repeat.row` and `repeat.col`. Each attribute specifies whether the values are to be repeated across rows and/or across columns. This avoids the need to store redundant values in a full-sized matrix of dimensions `dim`, as would be done with `expandAsMatrix`.

To illustrate, consider that rows usually correspond to genes while columns usually correspond to libraries. If we have a vector of library sizes, this will hold one unique value per library that is the same for all genes. Thus, we should use `byrow=TRUE`, which will construct a `CompressedMatrix` object storing one row containing this vector. Here, `repeat.row=TRUE` and `repeat.col=FALSE`, indicating that the row is to be repeated for all genes.

On the other hand, we may have a vector of gene-specific values that is the same for all libraries (e.g., dispersions). In this case, we should use `byrow=FALSE` to construct the `CompressedMatrix` object. This will store one column with `repeat.row=FALSE` and `repeat.col=TRUE`, indicating that the column should be repeated across libraries.

In cases where `x` is a scalar, `byrow` is ignored and both `repeat.row` and `repeat.col` will be `TRUE` by default. If `x` is a matrix, both attributes will be `FALSE`. If `x` is a `CompressedMatrix`, it will be returned without modification.

**Class methods**

Subsetting of a CompressedMatrix object depends on the values of `repeat.row` and `repeat.col`. If the rows are repeated, any subsetting by row will be effectively ignored, only altering the stored dimensions of `x` without changing the values. Similarly, if the columns are repeated, any subsetting by column will be ignored. If neither are repeated, subsetting behaves as it would for a normal matrix.

Combining of a CompressedMatrix object will also make use of the repeat structure. If rows are repeated in all objects to be combined, the output of `cbind` will also have repeated rows. Similarly, if columns are repeated, the output of `rbind` will also have repeated columns. Otherwise, all objects are expanded to their full size prior to combining.

Binary operators work on pairs of CompressedMatrix objects, again preserving the repeat structure whenever possible. Extracting dimensions uses a second `Dims` field in the attributes, bypassing the `dim` for a base matrix. Calling `as.matrix` on a CompressedMatrix object will return the ordinary (uncompressed) matrix.

**Author(s)**

Aaron Lun

**See Also**

[as.matrix](#), [expandAsMatrix](#)

**Examples**

```
# Repeated rows:
library.sizes <- runif(4, 1e6, 2e6)
lib.mat <- makeCompressedMatrix(library.sizes, c(10, 4), byrow=TRUE)
lib.mat

lib.mat[,1:2] # subset by column works as expected
lib.mat[1:10,] # subset by row has no effect (see Details)
as.matrix(lib.mat)

# Repeated columns:
gene.disp <- runif(10, 0.01, 0.1)
disp.mat <- makeCompressedMatrix(gene.disp, c(10, 4), byrow=FALSE)
disp.mat

disp.mat[,1:2] # subset by column has no effect
disp.mat[1:5,] # subset by row works as expected
as.matrix(disp.mat)

# Scalar:
weights <- makeCompressedMatrix(1, c(10, 4))
weights[1:10,] # subsetting has no effect
weights[,1:10]
as.matrix(weights)

# Matrix:
```

```
offsets <- makeCompressedMatrix(matrix(runif(40), 10, 4))
offsets[1:5,]
offsets[,1:2]
as.matrix(offsets)
```

---

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| maPlot | <i>Plots Log-Fold Change versus Log-Concentration (or, M versus A) for Count Data</i> |
|--------|---|

---

## Description

To represent counts that were low (e.g. zero in 1 library and non-zero in the other) in one of the two conditions, a 'smear' of points at low A value is presented.

## Usage

```
maPlot(x, y, logAbundance=NULL, logFC=NULL, normalize=FALSE, plot.it=TRUE,
       smearWidth=1, col=NULL, allCol="black", lowCol="orange", deCol="red",
       de.tags=NULL, smooth.scatter=FALSE, lowess=FALSE, ...)
```

## Arguments

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| x              | vector of counts or concentrations (group 1)  |
| y              | vector of counts or concentrations (group 2)  |
| logAbundance   | vector providing the abundance of each gene on the log <sub>2</sub> scale. Purely optional (default is NULL), but in combination with logFC provides a more direct way to create an MA-plot if the log-abundance and log-fold change are available. |
| logFC          | vector providing the log-fold change for each gene for a given experimental contrast. Default is NULL, only to be used together with logAbundance as both need to be non-null for their values to be used.  |
| normalize      | logical, whether to divide x and y vectors by their sum   |
| plot.it        | logical, whether to produce a plot  |
| smearWidth     | scalar, width of the smear  |
| col            | vector of colours for the points (if NULL, uses allCol and lowCol)  |
| allCol         | colour of the non-smear points  |
| lowCol         | colour of the smear points  |
| deCol          | colour of the DE (differentially expressed) points  |
| de.tags        | indices for genes identified as being differentially expressed; use exactTest or glmLRT to identify DE genes. Note that 'tag' and 'gene' are synonymous here.   |
| smooth.scatter | logical, whether to produce a 'smooth scatter' plot using the graphics::smoothScatter function or just a regular scatter plot; default is FALSE, i.e. produce a regular scatter plot  |
| lowess         | logical, indicating whether or not to add a lowess curve to the MA-plot to give an indication of any trend in the log-fold change with log-concentration  |
| ...            | further arguments passed on to plot   |



**Details**

The points to be smeared are identified as being equal to the minimum in one of the two groups. The smear is created by using random uniform numbers of width smearWidth to the left of the minimum A value.

**Value**

If plot.it=TRUE, a scatterplot is made on the current graphics device. The function also invisibly returns a list containing the M (logFC) and A (logConc) values used for the plot, plus identifiers w and v of genes for which M and A values, or just M values, respectively, were adjusted to make a nicer looking plot.

**Author(s)**

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy

**See Also**

[plotSmear](#)

**Examples**

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(10000,mu=5,size=2),ncol=4)
maPlot(y[,1], y[,2])
```

---

maximizeInterpolant    *Maximize a function given a table of values by spline interpolation.*

---

**Description**

Maximize a function given a table of values by spline interpolation.

**Usage**

```
maximizeInterpolant(x, y)
```

**Arguments**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| x | numeric vector of the inputs of the function.  |
| y | numeric matrix of function values at the values of x. Columns correspond to x values and each row corresponds to a different function to be maximized. |

**Details**

Calculates the cubic spline interpolant for each row the method of Forsythe et al (1977) using the function fmm\_spline from splines.c in the stats package). Then calculates the derivatives of the spline segments adjacent to the input with the maximum function value. This allows identification of the maximum of the interpolating spline.

**Value**

numeric vector of input values at which the function maximums occur.

**Author(s)**

Aaron Lun, improving on earlier code by Gordon Smyth

**References**

Forsythe, G. E., Malcolm, M. A. and Moler, C. B. (1977). *Computer Methods for Mathematical Computations*, Prentice-Hall.

**Examples**

```
x <- seq(0,1,length=10)
y <- rnorm(10,1,1)
maximizeInterpolant(x,y)
```

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| maximizeQuadratic | <i>Maximize a function given a table of values by quadratic interpolation.</i> |
|-------------------|--|

---

**Description**

Maximize a function given a table of values by quadratic interpolation.

**Usage**

```
maximizeQuadratic(y, x=1:ncol(y))
```

**Arguments**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| y | numeric matrix of response values.   |
| x | numeric matrix of inputs of the function of same dimension as y. If a vector, must be a row vector of length equal to ncol(y). |

**Details**

For each row of y, finds the three x values bracketing the maximum of y, interpolates a quadratic polynomial through these y for these three values and solves for the location of the maximum of the polynomial.

**Value**

numeric vector of length equal to nrow(y) giving the x-value at which y is maximized.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[maximizeInterpolant](#)

**Examples**

```
y <- matrix(rnorm(5*9),5,9)
maximizeQuadratic(y)
```

---

meanvar

*Explore the Mean-Variance Relationship for DGE Data*

---

**Description**

Appropriate modelling of the mean-variance relationship in DGE data is important for making inferences about differential expression. Here are functions to compute gene means and variances, as well as looking at these quantities when data is binned based on overall expression level.

**Usage**

```
plotMeanVar(object, meanvar=NULL, show.raw.vars=FALSE, show.tagwise.vars=FALSE,
            show.binned.common.disp.vars=FALSE, show.ave.raw.vars=TRUE,
            scalar=NULL, NBline=FALSE, nbins=100, log.axes="xy", xlab=NULL,
            ylab=NULL, ...)
binMeanVar(x, group, nbins=100, common.dispersion=FALSE, object=NULL)
```

**Arguments**

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| object                       | DGEList object containing the raw data and dispersion value. According to the method desired for computing the dispersion, either <code>estimateCommonDisp</code> and (possibly) <code>estimateTagwiseDisp</code> should be run on the DGEList object before using <code>plotMeanVar</code> . The argument <code>object</code> must be supplied in the function <code>binMeanVar</code> if common dispersion values are to be computed for each bin. |
| meanvar                      | list (optional) containing the output from <code>binMeanVar</code> or the returned value of <code>plotMeanVar</code> . Providing this object as an argument will save time in computing the gene means and variances when producing a mean-variance plot.  |
| show.raw.vars                | logical, whether or not to display the raw (pooled) genewise variances on the mean-variance plot. Default is FALSE.  |
| show.tagwise.vars            | logical, whether or not to display the estimated genewise variances on the mean-variance plot (note that ‘tag’ and ‘gene’ are synonymous). Default is FALSE.   |
| show.binned.common.disp.vars | logical, whether or not to compute the common dispersion for each bin of genes and show the variances computed from those binned common dispersions and the mean expression level of the respective bin of genes. Default is FALSE.  |

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <code>show.ave.raw.vars</code> | logical, whether or not to show the average of the raw variances for each bin of genes plotted against the average expression level of the genes in the bin. Averages are taken on the square root scale as regular arithmetic means are likely to be upwardly biased for count data, whereas averaging on the square scale gives a better summary of the mean-variance relationship in the data. The default is TRUE. |
| <code>scalar</code>            | vector (optional) of scaling values to divide counts by. Would expect to have this the same length as the number of columns in the count matrix (i.e. the number of libraries).  |
| <code>NBline</code>            | logical, whether or not to add a line on the graph showing the mean-variance relationship for a NB model with common dispersion.   |
| <code>nbins</code>             | scalar giving the number of bins (formed by using the quantiles of the genewise mean expression levels) for which to compute average means and variances for exploring the mean-variance relationship. Default is 100 bins   |
| <code>log.axes</code>          | character vector indicating if any of the axes should use a log scale. Default is "xy", which makes both y and x axes on the log scale. Other valid options are "x" (log scale on x-axis only), "y" (log scale on y-axis only) and "" (linear scale on x- and y-axis).   |
| <code>xlab</code>              | character string giving the label for the x-axis. Standard graphical parameter. If left as the default NULL, then the x-axis label will be set to "logConc".   |
| <code>ylab</code>              | character string giving the label for the y-axis. Standard graphical parameter. If left as the default NULL, then the x-axis label will be set to "logConc".   |
| <code>...</code>               | further arguments passed on to <code>plot</code>   |
| <code>x</code>                 | matrix of count data, with rows representing genes and columns representing samples  |
| <code>group</code>             | factor giving the experimental group or condition to which each sample (i.e. column of <code>x</code> or element of <code>y</code> ) belongs   |
| <code>common.dispersion</code> | logical, whether or not to compute the common dispersion for each bin of genes.  |

## Details

This function is useful for exploring the mean-variance relationship in the data. Raw variances are, for each gene, the pooled variance of the counts from each sample, divided by a scaling factor (by default the effective library size). The function will plot the average raw variance for genes split into `nbins` bins by overall expression level. The averages are taken on the square-root scale as for count data the arithmetic mean is upwardly biased. Taking averages on the square-root scale provides a useful summary of how the variance of the gene counts change with respect to expression level (abundance). A line showing the Poisson mean-variance relationship (mean equals variance) is always shown to illustrate how the genewise variances may differ from a Poisson mean-variance relationship. Optionally, the raw variances and estimated genewise variances can also be plotted. Estimated genewise variances can be calculated using either qCML estimates of the genewise dispersions (`estimateTagwiseDisp`) or Cox-Reid conditional inference estimates (`CRDisp`). A log-log scale is used for the plot.

**Value**

`plotMeanVar` produces a mean-variance plot for the DGE data using the options described above. `plotMeanVar` and `binMeanVar` both return a list with the following components:

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <code>avemeans</code>  | vector of the average expression level within each bin of genes, with the average taken on the square-root scale              |
| <code>avevars</code>   | vector of the average raw pooled gene-wise variance within each bin of genes, with the average taken on the square-root scale |
| <code>bin.means</code> | list containing the average (mean) expression level for genes divided into bins based on amount of expression                 |
| <code>bin.vars</code>  | list containing the pooled variance for genes divided into bins based on amount of expression                                 |
| <code>means</code>     | vector giving the mean expression level for each gene   |
| <code>vars</code>      | vector giving the pooled variance for each gene   |
| <code>bins</code>      | list giving the indices of the genes in each bin, ordered from lowest expression bin to highest                               |

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy

**See Also**

[plotMeanVar2](#) is related in purpose but works from raw counts and uses standardized residuals.

[plotMDS.DGEList](#), [plotSmear](#) and [maPlot](#) provide more ways of visualizing DGE data.

**Examples**

```

y <- matrix(rnbinom(1000,mu=10,size=2),ncol=4)
d <- DGEList(counts=y,group=c(1,1,2,2),lib.size=c(1000:1003))
plotMeanVar(d) # Produce a straight-forward mean-variance plot
# Produce a mean-variance plot with the raw variances shown and save the means
# and variances for later use
meanvar <- plotMeanVar(d, show.raw.vars=TRUE)
## If we want to show estimated genewise variances on the plot, we must first estimate them!
d <- estimateCommonDisp(d) # Obtain an estimate of the dispersion parameter
d <- estimateTagwiseDisp(d) # Obtain genewise dispersion estimates
# Use previously saved object to speed up plotting
plotMeanVar(d, meanvar=meanvar, show.tagwise.vars=TRUE, NBlines=TRUE)
## We could also estimate common/genewise dispersions using the Cox-Reid methods with an
## appropriate design matrix

```

mgglm

*Fit Negative Binomial Generalized Linear Models to Multiple Response Vectors: Low Level Functions*

## Description

Fit the same log-link negative binomial or Poisson generalized linear model (GLM) to each row of a matrix of counts.

## Usage

```
mgglmOneGroup(y, dispersion = 0, offset = 0, weights = NULL,
              coef.start = NULL, maxit = 50, tol = 1e-10, verbose = FALSE)
mgglmOneWay(y, design = NULL, group = NULL, dispersion = 0, offset = 0, weights = NULL,
            coef.start = NULL, maxit = 50, tol = 1e-10)
mgglmLevenberg(y, design, dispersion = 0, offset = 0, weights = NULL,
               coef.start = NULL, start.method = "null", maxit = 200, tol = 1e-06)
designAsFactor(design)
```

## Arguments

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| y            | numeric matrix containing the negative binomial counts. Rows for genes and columns for libraries.   |
| design       | numeric matrix giving the design matrix of the GLM. Assumed to be full column rank. This is a required argument for mgglmLevenberg and code{designAsFactor}. For mgglmOneWay, it defaults to model.matrix(~0+group) if group is specified and otherwise to model.matrix(~1).  |
| group        | factor giving group membership for oneway layout. If both design and group are both specified, then they must agree in terms of designAsFactor. If design=NULL, then a group-means design matrix is implied.  |
| dispersion   | numeric scalar or vector giving the dispersion parameter for each GLM. Can be a scalar giving one value for all genes, or a vector of length equal to the number of genes giving genewise dispersions.  |
| offset       | numeric vector or matrix giving the offset that is to be included in the log-linear model predictor. Can be a scalar, a vector of length equal to the number of libraries, or a matrix of the same size as y.   |
| weights      | numeric vector or matrix of non-negative quantitative weights. Can be a vector of length equal to the number of libraries, or a matrix of the same size as y.   |
| coef.start   | numeric matrix of starting values for the linear model coefficients. Number of rows should agree with y and number of columns should agree with design. For mgglmOneGroup, a numeric vector or a matrix with one column. This argument does not usually need to be set as the automatic starting values perform well. |
| start.method | method used to generate starting values when coef.start=NULL. Possible values are "null" to start from the null model of equal expression levels or "y" to use the data as starting value for the mean.   |

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>tol</code>     | numeric scalar giving the convergence tolerance. For <code>mglmOneGroup</code> , convergence is judged successful when the step size falls below <code>tol</code> in absolute size.                 |
| <code>maxit</code>   | integer giving the maximum number of iterations for the Fisher scoring algorithm. The iteration will be stopped when this limit is reached even if the convergence criterion hasn't been satisfied. |
| <code>verbose</code> | logical. If TRUE, warnings will be issued when <code>maxit</code> iterations are exceeded before convergence is achieved.   |

## Details

These functions are low-level work-horses used by higher-level functions in the `edgeR` package, especially by `glmFit`. Most users will not need to call these functions directly.

The functions `mglmOneGroup`, `mglmOneWay` and `mglmLevenberg` all fit a negative binomial GLM to each row of `y`. The row-wise GLMs all have the same design matrix but possibly different dispersions, offsets and weights. These functions are all low-level in that they operate on atomic objects (numeric matrices and vectors).

`mglmOneGroup` fits an intercept only model to each response vector. In other words, it treats all the libraries as belonging to one group. It implements Fisher scoring with a score-statistic stopping criterion for each gene. Excellent starting values are available for the null model so this function seldom has any problems with convergence. It is used by other `edgeR` functions to compute the overall abundance for each gene.

`mglmOneWay` fits a oneway layout to each response vector. It treats the libraries as belonging to a number of groups and calls `mglmOneGroup` for each group.

`mglmLevenberg` fits an arbitrary log-linear model to each response vector. It implements a Levenberg-Marquardt modification of the GLM scoring algorithm to prevent divergence. The main computation is implemented in C++.

All these functions treat the dispersion parameter of the negative binomial distribution as a known input.

`designAsFactor` is used to convert a general design matrix into a oneway layout if that is possible. It determines how many distinct row values the design matrix is capable of computing and returns a factor with a level for each possible distinct value.

## Value

`mglmOneGroup` produces a numeric vector of coefficients, which estimate the log-nucleotide-fraction for each gene.

`mglmOneWay` produces a list with the following components:

`coefficients` matrix of estimated coefficients for the linear models. Rows correspond to rows of `y` and columns to columns of `design`.

`fitted.values` matrix of fitted values. Of same dimensions as `y`.

`mglmLevenberg` produces a list with the following components:

`coefficients` matrix of estimated coefficients for the linear models.

`fitted.values` matrix of fitted values.

deviance        numeric vector of residual deviances.  
iter            number of iterations used.  
fail            logical vector indicating genes for which the maximum damping was exceeded before convergence was achieved.

designAsFactor returns a factor of length equal to nrow(design).

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen, Davis McCarthy, Aaron Lun. C++ code by Aaron Lun.

### References

McCarthy DJ, Chen Y, Smyth GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. doi:10.1093/nar/gks042

Chen Y, Chen L, Lun ATL, Baldoni PL, Smyth GK (2024). edgeR 4.0: powerful differential analysis of sequencing data with expanded functionality and improved support for small counts and larger datasets. *bioRxiv* 2024.01.21.576131. doi:10.1101/2024.01.21.576131

### See Also

Most users will call either `glmFit`, the higher-level function offering more object-orientated GLM modelling of DGE data, or else `exactTest`, which is designed for oneway layouts.

### Examples

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(1000, mu = 10, size = 2), ncol = 4)
lib.size <- colSums(y)
dispersion <- 0.1

## Compute intercept for each row
beta <- mglmOneGroup(y, dispersion = dispersion, offset = log(lib.size))

## Unlogged intercepts add to one:
sum(exp(beta))

## Fit the NB GLM to the counts with a given design matrix
f1 <- factor(c(1,1,2,2))
f2 <- factor(c(1,2,1,2))
X <- model.matrix(~ f1 + f2)
fit <- mglmLevenberg(y, X, dispersion = dispersion, offset = log(lib.size))
head(fit$coefficients)
```



---

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| modelMatrixMeth | <i>Construct Design Matrix for edgeR Analysis of Methylation Count Data</i> |
|-----------------|---|

---

### Description

Construct design matrix (aka model matrix) for edgeR analysis of methylation count data from sample level information.

### Usage

```
modelMatrixMeth(object, ...)
```

### Arguments

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| object | a sample-level design matrix or model formula or terms object. |
| ...    | any other arguments are passed to <code>model.matrix</code> .  |

### Details

This function computes a design matrix for modeling methylated and unmethylated counts. The resulting design matrix can be input to `glmFit` when analysing BS-seq methylation data using edgeR.

In BS-seq methylation analysis, each DNA sample generates two counts, a count of methylated reads and a count of unmethylated reads, for each genomic locus for each sample. The function converts sample-level information about the treatment conditions to make an appropriate design matrix with two rows for each sample. Counts are assumed to be ordered as methylated and then unmethylated by sample.

If `design.treatments <- model.matrix(object, ...)` has `nsamples` rows and `p` columns, then `modelMatrixMeth(object, ...)` has `2*nsamples` rows and `nsamples+p` columns. See Chen et al (2017) for more information.

### Value

A numeric design matrix. It has 2 rows for each sample and a column for each sample in addition to the columns generated by `model.matrix(object, ...)`.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth

### References

Chen, Y, Pal, B, Visvader, JE, Smyth, GK (2017). Differential methylation analysis of reduced representation bisulfite sequencing experiments using edgeR. *F1000Research* 6, 2055. <https://f1000research.com/articles/6-2055>

**See Also**

[model.matrix](#) in the stats package.

**Examples**

```
Treatments <- gl(3,2,labels=c("A","B","C"))
modelMatrixMeth(~Treatments)

# Equivalent calling sequence:
design.treatments <- model.matrix(~Treatments)
modelMatrixMeth(design.treatments)
```

---

movingAverageByCol      *Moving Average Smoother of Matrix Columns*

---

**Description**

Apply a moving average smoother to the columns of a matrix.

**Usage**

```
movingAverageByCol(x, width=5, full.length=TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| x           | numeric matrix  |
| width       | integer, width of window of rows to be averaged                 |
| full.length | logical value, should output have same number of rows as input? |

**Details**

If `full.length=TRUE`, narrower windows are used at the start and end of each column to make a column of the same length as input. If `FALSE`, all values are averager of width input values, so the number of rows is less than input.

**Value**

Numeric matrix containing smoothed values. If `full.length=TRUE`, of same dimension as x. If `full.length=FALSE`, has width-1 fewer rows than x.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**Examples**

```
x <- matrix(rpois(20,lambda=5),10,2)
movingAverageByCol(x,3)
```

---

|                |                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| nbinomDeviance | <i>Negative Binomial Deviance</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|

---

### Description

Fit the same log-link negative binomial or Poisson generalized linear model (GLM) to each row of a matrix of counts.

### Usage

```
nbinomDeviance(y, mean, dispersion=0, weights=NULL)
```

### Arguments

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| y          | numeric matrix containing the negative binomial counts, with rows for genes and columns for libraries. A vector will be treated as a matrix with one row.  |
| mean       | numeric matrix of expected values, of same dimension as y. A vector will be treated as a matrix with one row.  |
| dispersion | numeric vector or matrix of negative binomial dispersions, as for <code>glmFit</code> . Can be a scalar, a vector of length equal to <code>nrow(y)</code> , or a matrix of same dimensions as y. |
| weights    | numeric vector or matrix of non-negative weights, as for <code>glmFit</code> . Can be a scalar, a vector of length equal to <code>ncol(y)</code> , or a matrix of same dimensions as y.          |

### Details

Computes the total residual deviance for each row of y, i.e., weighted row sums of the unit deviances.

Care is taken to ensure accurate computation in limiting cases when the dispersion is near zero or `mean*dispersion` is very large.

### Value

`nbinomDeviance` returns a numeric vector of length equal to the number of rows of y.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen, Aaron Lun. C++ code by Aaron Lun.

### References

Dunn PK, Smyth GK (2018). *Generalized linear models with examples in R*. Springer, New York, NY. doi:10.1007/9781441901187

Jorgensen B (2013). Generalized linear models. *Encyclopedia of Environmetrics 3*, Wiley. doi:10.1002/9780470057339.vag010.pub2

McCarthy DJ, Chen Y, Smyth GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. doi:10.1093/nar/gks042

### See Also

[nbinomUnitDeviance](#)

### Examples

```
y <- matrix(1:6,3,2)
mu <- matrix(3,3,2)
nbinomDeviance(y,mu,dispersion=0.2)
```

---

nbinomUnitDeviance      *Negative Binomial Unit Deviance*

---

### Description

Compute unit deviances for the negative binomial distribution.

### Usage

```
nbinomUnitDeviance(y, mean, dispersion = 0)
```

### Arguments

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| y          | vector or matrix of negative binomial counts.  |
| mean       | vector or matrix means (expected values). If a matrix, then of same dimensions as y.                                   |
| dispersion | negative binomial dispersions. Can be a single value, a vector of length nrow(y), or a matrix of same dimensions as y. |

### Details

The unit deviance of the negative binomial distribution is a measure of the distance between y and mean. If mean and dispersion are the true mean and dispersion of the negative binomial distribution, then the unit deviance follows an approximate chisquare distribution on 1 degree of freedom.

This function computes the unit deviance for each y observation. Care is taken to ensure accurate computation in limiting cases when the dispersion is near zero or mean\*dispersion is very large.

### Value

Numeric vector or matrix of the same size as y containing unit deviances.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen, Aaron Lun. C++ code by Aaron Lun.

**References**

Dunn PK, Smyth GK (2018). *Generalized linear models with examples in R*. Springer, New York, NY. doi:10.1007/9781441901187 ISBN: 978-1-4419-0118-7.

Jorgensen B (2013). Generalized linear models. *Encyclopedia of Environmetrics 3*, Wiley. doi:10.1002/9780470057339.vag010.pub2

McCarthy DJ, Chen Y, Smyth GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. doi:10.1093/nar/gks042

**Examples**

```
y <- 1:4
names(y) <- letters[1:4]
nbinomUnitDeviance(y,mean=2.5,dispersion=0.2)
```

---

nearestReftoX

*Find Nearest Element of Reference for each Element of X*

---

**Description**

Find nearest element of a sorted reference vector and to each element of x.

**Usage**

```
nearestReftoX(x, reference, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| x         | numeric vector.                             |
| reference | numeric vector, sorted in increasing order. |
| ...       | other arguments as passed to findInterval.  |

**Details**

This function finds the element of a reference table (reference) that is closest to each element of an incoming vector (x).

The function is a simple wrapper for findInterval in the base package. It calls findInterval with vec equal to the mid-points between the reference values.

**Value**

Integer vector giving indices of elements of reference.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**[findInterval](#)**Examples**

```
nearestRefToX(c(-10,0.5,0.6,2,3), reference = c(-1,0,2))
```

---

nearestTSS

*Find Nearest Transcriptional Start Site*


---

**Description**

Find nearest TSS and distance to nearest TSS for a vector of chromosome loci.

**Usage**

```
nearestTSS(chr, locus, species="Hs")
```

**Arguments**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| chr     | character vector of chromosome names.   |
| locus   | integer or numeric vector of genomic loci, of same length as chr.   |
| species | character string specifying the species. Possible values are "Hs" (human hg38), "Mm" (mouse mm10), "Rn" (rat), "Dm" (fly), "Dr" (zebra fish), "Ce" (worm), "Bt" (bovine), "Gg" (chicken), "Mmu" (rhesus), "Cf" (canine) or "Pt" (chimpanzee). |

**Details**

This function takes a series of genomic loci, defined by a vector of chromosome names and a vector of genomic positions within the chromosomes, and finds the nearest transcriptional start site (TSS) for each locus. The chromosome names can be in the format "1", "2", "X" or can be "chr1", "chr2", "chrX".

For genes with more than one annotated TSS, only the most 5' (upstream) of the alternative TSS is reported.

This function uses the Bioconductor organism package named "org.XX.eg.db" where XX is species. Note that each organism package supports only a particular build of the genome for that species. For human (species="Hs", the results are for the hg38 genome build. For mouse (species="Mm"), the results are for the mm10 genome build.

**Value**

A data.frame with the following columns:

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| gene_id  | character vector giving the Entrez Gene ID of the nearest TSS for each element of chr and locus.   |
| symbol   | character vector of gene symbols.  |
| strand   | character vector with "+" for positive strand genes and "-" for negative strand genes.   |
| tss      | integer vector giving TSS.   |
| width    | integer vector giving genomic width of the gene.   |
| distance | integer vector giving distance to nearest TSS. Positive values means that the TSS is downstream of the locus, negative values means that it is upstream. Gene body loci will therefore have negative distances and promoter loci will have positive. |

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[nearestRefToX](#)

**Examples**

```
nearestTSS(chr = c("1","1"), locus = c(1000000,2000000))
```

---

normalizeBetweenArrays.DGEList

*Apply Microarray Normalization to DGEList*

---

**Description**

Applies microarray-style normalization to a DGEList by modifying the offset matrix.

**Usage**

```
normalizeBetweenArrays.DGEList(object, method = "cyclicloess", cyclic.method = "affy", ...)
```

**Arguments**

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| object        | DGEList object.  |
| method        | character string specifying the normalization method to be used. Choices are "none", "scale", "quantile" or "cyclicloess".   |
| cyclic.method | character string indicating the variant of normalizeCyclicLoess to be used if method=="cyclicloess", see <a href="#">normalizeCyclicLoess</a> for possible values. |
| ...           | other arguments are passed to normalizeQuantiles or normalizeCyclicLoess   |

**Details**

This function applies microarray-style normalization methods to a `DGEList` object by setting the offset matrix appropriately. The original counts remain unchanged.

The function `cpm()` to compute `log2CPM` values, then uses `limma::normalizeBetweenArrays` to apply the specified normalization method to the `log2CPM` values, then the difference between the normalized and unnormalized `log2CPM` matrices is transferred to the offset matrix. As usual, the offset entries represent observation-specific normalized loge library sizes.

This function is an alternative to `normLibSizes`. If `normLibSizes` has been called previously on the same object, then the results will be ignored.

**Value**

The input object is returned with an appropriately normalized offset component.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[normalizeBetweenArrays](#).

**Examples**

```
ngenes <- 100
nsamples <- 4
Counts <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nsamples,mu=5,size=10),ngenes,nsamples)
rownames(Counts) <- 1:ngenes
colnames(Counts) <- paste0("S",1:4)
y <- DGEList(counts=Counts)
y <- normalizeBetweenArrays.DGEList(y)
head(y$offset)
```

---

normalizeChIPtoInput *Normalize ChIP-Seq Read Counts to Input and Test for Enrichment*

---

**Description**

Normalize ChIP-Seq read counts to input control values, then test for significant enrichment relative to the control.

**Usage**

```
normalizeChIPtoInput(input, response, dispersion=0.01, niter=6, loss="p", plot=FALSE,
                    verbose=FALSE, ...)
calcNormOffsetsforChIP(input, response, dispersion=0.01, niter=6, loss="p", plot=FALSE,
                       verbose=FALSE, ...)
```



**Arguments**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| input      | numeric vector of non-negative input values, not necessarily integer.  |
| response   | vector of non-negative integer counts of some ChIP-Seq mark for each gene or other genomic feature.                          |
| dispersion | negative binomial dispersion, must be positive.  |
| niter      | number of iterations.  |
| loss       | loss function to be used when fitting the response counts to the input: "p" for cumulative probabilities or "z" for z-value. |
| plot       | if TRUE, a plot of the fit is produced.  |
| verbose    | if TRUE, working estimates from each iteration are output.   |
| ...        | other arguments are passed to the plot function.   |

**Details**

normalizeChIPtoInput identifies significant enrichment for a ChIP-Seq mark relative to input values. The ChIP-Seq mark might be for example transcriptional factor binding or an epigenetic mark. The function works on the data from one sample. Replicate libraries are not explicitly accounted for; this function can either be run on each sample individually or on a pooled of replicates.

ChIP-Seq counts are assumed to be summarized by gene or similar genomic feature of interest.

This function makes the assumption that a non-negligible proportion of the genes, say 25% or more, are not truly marked by the ChIP-Seq feature of interest. Unmarked genes are further assumed to have counts at a background level proportional to the input. The function aligns the counts to the input so that the counts for the unmarked genes behave like a random sample. The function estimates the proportion of marked genes, and removes marked genes from the fitting process. For this purpose, marked genes are those with a Holm-adjusted mid-p-value less than 0.5.

When plot=TRUE, the genes shown in red are the marked genes (with Holm mid-p-value < 0.5) that have been removed as probably enriched during the fitting process. The normalization line has been fitted to the non-marked genes plotted in black.

The read counts are treated as negative binomial. The dispersion parameter is not estimated from the data; instead a reasonable value is assumed to be given.

calcNormOffsetsforChIP returns a numeric matrix of offsets, ready for linear modelling.

**Value**

normalizeChIPtoInput returns a list with components

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| p.value                | numeric vector of p-values for enrichment.  |
| scaling.factor         | factor by which input is scaled to align with response counts for unmarked genes. |
| prop.enriched          | proportion of marked genes, as internally estimated                               |
| calcNormOffsetsforChIP | returns a numeric matrix of offsets.  |

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

---

|              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| normLibSizes | <i>Normalize Library Sizes</i> |
|--------------|--------------------------------|

---

### Description

Calculate scaling factors to convert the raw library sizes for a set of sequenced samples into normalized effective library sizes.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
normLibSizes(object,
              method = c("TMM", "TMMwsp", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none"),
              refColumn = NULL, logratioTrim = .3, sumTrim = 0.05, doWeighting = TRUE,
              Acutoff = -1e10, p = 0.75, ...)

## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
normLibSizes(object,
              method = c("TMM", "TMMwsp", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none"),
              refColumn = NULL, logratioTrim = .3, sumTrim = 0.05, doWeighting = TRUE,
              Acutoff = -1e10, p = 0.75, ...)

## Default S3 method:
normLibSizes(object, lib.size = NULL,
              method = c("TMM", "TMMwsp", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none"),
              refColumn = NULL, logratioTrim = .3, sumTrim = 0.05, doWeighting = TRUE,
              Acutoff = -1e10, p = 0.75, ...)

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
calcNormFactors(object,
                 method = c("TMM", "TMMwsp", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none"),
                 refColumn = NULL, logratioTrim = .3, sumTrim = 0.05, doWeighting = TRUE,
                 Acutoff = -1e10, p = 0.75, ...)

## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
calcNormFactors(object,
                 method = c("TMM", "TMMwsp", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none"),
                 refColumn = NULL, logratioTrim = .3, sumTrim = 0.05, doWeighting = TRUE,
                 Acutoff = -1e10, p = 0.75, ...)

## Default S3 method:
calcNormFactors(object, lib.size = NULL,
                 method = c("TMM", "TMMwsp", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none"),
                 refColumn = NULL, logratioTrim = .3, sumTrim = 0.05, doWeighting = TRUE,
                 Acutoff = -1e10, p = 0.75, ...)
```

### Arguments

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| object | a matrix of raw read counts or a DGEList object or a SummarizedExperiment object. |
|--------|---|

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| lib.size     | numeric vector of library sizes corresponding to the columns of the matrix object.  |
| method       | normalization method to be used.  |
| refColumn    | column to use as reference for method="TMM". Can be a column number or a numeric vector of length nrow(object).   |
| logratioTrim | the fraction (0 to 0.5) of observations to be trimmed from each tail of the distribution of log-ratios (M-values) before computing the mean. Used by method="TMM" for each pair of samples. |
| sumTrim      | the fraction (0 to 0.5) of observations to be trimmed from each tail of the distribution of A-values before computing the mean. Used by method="TMM" for each pair of samples.              |
| doWeighting  | logical, whether to use (asymptotic binomial precision) weights when computing the mean M-values. Used by method="TMM" for each pair of samples.  |
| Acutoff      | minimum cutoff applied to A-values. Count pairs with lower A-values are ignored. Used by method="TMM" for each pair of samples.   |
| p            | numeric value between 0 and 1 specifying which quantile of the counts should be used by method="upperquartile".   |
| ...          | other arguments are not currently used.   |

## Details

This function computes scaling factors to convert observed library sizes into normalized library sizes, also called "effective library sizes". The effective library sizes for use in downstream analysis are `lib.size * norm.factors` where `lib.size` contains the original library sizes and `norm.factors` is the vector of scaling factors computed by this function.

The TMM method implements the trimmed mean of M-values method proposed by Robinson and Oshlack (2010). By default, the M-values are weighted according to inverse variances, as computed by the delta method for logarithms of binomial random variables. If `refColumn` is unspecified, then the column whose count-per-million upper quartile is closest to the mean upper quartile is set as the reference library.

The TMMwsp method stands for "TMM with singleton pairing". This is a variant of TMM that is intended to have more stable performance when the counts have a high proportion of zeros. In the TMM method, genes that have zero count in either library are ignored when comparing pairs of libraries. In the TMMwsp method, the positive counts from such genes are reused to increase the number of features by which the libraries are compared. The singleton positive counts are paired up between the libraries in decreasing order of size and then a slightly modified TMM method is applied to the re-ordered libraries. If `refColumn` is unspecified, then the column with largest sum of square-root counts is used as the reference library.

RLE is the scaling factor method proposed by Anders and Huber (2010). We call it "relative log expression", as median library is calculated from the geometric mean of all columns and the median ratio of each sample to the median library is taken as the scale factor.

The upperquartile method is the upper-quartile normalization method of Bullard et al (2010), in which the scale factors are calculated from the 75% quantile of the counts for each library, after removing genes that are zero in all libraries. The idea is generalized here to allow normalization by any quantile of the count distributions.

If method="none", then the normalization factors are set to 1.

For symmetry, normalization factors are adjusted to multiply to 1. Rows of object that have zero counts for all columns are removed before normalization factors are computed. The number of such rows does not affect the estimated normalization factors.

If object is a SummarizedExperiment object, then it is converted to a DGEList using SE2DGEList and the DGEList method applied.

### Value

If object is a matrix, then the output is a vector with length ncol(object) giving the library scaling factors.

If object is a DGEList or SummarizedExperiment object, then the output is a DGEList the same as input with the library scaling factors stored as object\$samples\$norm.factors.

### Note

normLibSizes is the new name for calcNormFactors. The two functions are equivalent but calcNormFactors will eventually be retired.

### Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen.

### References

Anders, S, Huber, W (2010). Differential expression analysis for sequence count data *Genome Biology* 11, R106.

Bullard JH, Purdom E, Hansen KD, Dudoit S. (2010) Evaluation of statistical methods for normalization and differential expression in mRNA-Seq experiments. *BMC Bioinformatics* 11, 94.

Robinson MD, Oshlack A (2010). A scaling normalization method for differential expression analysis of RNA-seq data. *Genome Biology* 11, R25.

### See Also

[getNormLibSizes](#), [SE2DGEList](#).

### Examples

```
y <- matrix( rpois(1000, lambda=5), nrow=200 )
normLibSizes(y)

# The TMM and TMMwsp methods give zero weight to the genes with the largest fold-changes:
y <- cbind(1,c(1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,100))
normLibSizes(y, lib.size=c(1e6,1e6))

# normLibSizes makes the fold-changes for the majority of genes as close to 1 as possible:
# In this example, computing CPMs with raw library sizes makes the two samples look quite different.
dge <- DGEList(counts=y)
cpm(dge)
```

```
# By contrast, normalizing the library sizes makes most of the CPMs equal in the two samples:
dge <- normLibSizes(dge)
cpm(dge)
getNormLibSizes(dge)
```

---

plotBCV

*Plot Biological Coefficient of Variation*

---

### Description

Plot the genewise biological coefficient of variation (BCV) against gene abundance (in log<sub>2</sub> counts per million).

### Usage

```
plotBCV(y, xlab="Average log CPM", ylab="Biological coefficient of variation",
        pch=16, cex=0.2, col.common="red", col.trend="blue", col.tagwise="black", ...)
```

### Arguments

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| y           | a DGEList object.   |
| xlab        | label for the x-axis.   |
| ylab        | label for the y-axis.   |
| pch         | the plotting symbol. See <a href="#">points</a> for more details.                             |
| cex         | plot symbol expansion factor. See <a href="#">points</a> for more details.                    |
| col.common  | color of line showing common dispersion   |
| col.trend   | color of line showing dispersion trend  |
| col.tagwise | color of points showing genewise dispersions. Note that ‘tag’ and ‘gene’ are synonymous here. |
| ...         | any other arguments are passed to plot.   |

### Details

The BCV is the square root of the negative binomial dispersion. This function displays the common, trended and genewise BCV estimates.

### Value

A plot is created on the current graphics device.

### Author(s)

Davis McCarthy, Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth

**Examples**

```
BCV.true <- 0.1
y <- DGEList(matrix(rnbinom(6000, size = 1/BCV.true^2, mu = 10),1000,6))
y <- estimateCommonDisp(y)
y <- estimateTrendedDisp(y)
y <- estimateTagwiseDisp(y)
plotBCV(y)
```

---

plotExonUsage

---

*Create a Plot of Exon Usage from Exon-Level Count Data*


---

**Description**

Create a plot of exon usage for a given gene by plotting the (un)transformed counts for each exon, coloured by experimental group.

**Usage**

```
plotExonUsage(y, geneID, group=NULL, transform="none", counts.per.million=TRUE,
              legend.coords=NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| y                  | either a matrix of exon-level counts, a list containing a matrix of counts for each exon or a DGEList object with (at least) elements counts (table of counts summarized at the exon level) and samples (data frame containing information about experimental group, library size and normalization factor for the library size). Each row of y should represent one exon. |
| geneID             | character string giving the name of the gene for which exon usage is to be plotted.  |
| group              | factor supplying the experimental group/condition to which each sample (column of y) belongs. If NULL (default) the function will try to extract if from y, which only works if y is a DGEList object.   |
| transform          | character, supplying the method of transformation to be applied to the exon counts, if any. Options are "none" (original counts are preserved), "sqrt" (square-root transformation) and "log2" (log2 transformation). Default is "none".   |
| counts.per.million | logical, if TRUE then counts per million (as determined from total library sizes) will be plotted for each exon, if FALSE the raw read counts will be plotted. Using counts per million effectively normalizes for different read depth among the different samples, which can make the exon usage plots easier to interpret.  |
| legend.coords      | optional vector of length 2 giving the x- and y-coordinates of the legend on the plot. If NULL (default), the legend will be automatically placed near the top right corner of the plot.   |
| ...                | optional further arguments to be passed on to plot.  |

**Details**

This function produces a simple plot for comparing exon usage between different experimental conditions for a given gene.

**Value**

plotExonUsage (invisibly) returns the transformed matrix of counts for the gene being plotted and produces a plot to the current device.

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[spliceVariants](#) for methods to detect genes with evidence for alternative exon usage.

**Examples**

```
# generate exon counts from NB, create list object
y<-matrix(rnbinom(40,size=1,mu=10),nrow=10)
rownames(y) <- rep(c("gene.1","gene.2"), each=5)
d<-DGEList(counts=y,group=rep(1:2,each=2))
plotExonUsage(d, "gene.1")
```

---

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| plotMD.DGEList | <i>Mean-Difference Plot of Count Data</i> |
|----------------|---|

---

**Description**

Creates a mean-difference plot (aka MA plot) with color coding for highlighted points.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
plotMD(object, column=1, xlab="Average log CPM (this sample and others)",
        ylab="log-ratio (this sample vs others)",
        main=colnames(object)[column], status=object$genes$Status,
        zero.weights=FALSE, prior.count=3, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
plotMD(object, column=1, xlab="Average log CPM (this sample and others)",
        ylab="log-ratio (this sample vs others)", zero.weights=FALSE, prior.count=3, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
plotMD(object, column=ncol(object), coef=NULL, xlab="Average log CPM",
        ylab="log-fold-change", main=colnames(object)[column],
        status=object$genes$Status, zero.weights=FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGELRT'
plotMD(object, xlab="Average log CPM", ylab="log-fold-change",
```

```

        main=object$comparison, status=object$genes$Status, contrast=1,
        adjust.method="BH", p.value=0.05, ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEEExact'
plotMD(object, xlab="Average log CPM", ylab="log-fold-change",
        main=NULL, status=object$genes$Status,
        adjust.method="BH", p.value=0.05, ...)

```

## Arguments

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| object        | an object of class DGEList, SummarizedExperiment, DGEGLM, DGEGLM or DGEEExact.   |
| column        | integer, column of object to be plotted.   |
| coef          | alternative to column for fitted model objects. If specified, then column is ignored.  |
| xlab          | character string, label for x-axis   |
| ylab          | character string, label for y-axis   |
| main          | character string, title for plot   |
| status        | vector giving the control status of each spot on the array, of same length as the number of rows of object. If NULL under the DGEList, SummarizedExperiment or DGEGLM method, then all points are plotted in the default color, symbol and size. If NULL under the DGELRT or DGEEExact method, then <code>decideTests</code> is run to determine the status of all the genes. The up-regulated DE genes are highlighted in red and down-regulated in blue. |
| zero.weights  | logical, should spots with zero or negative weights be plotted?  |
| prior.count   | the average prior count to be added to each observation. Larger values produce more shrinkage.   |
| contrast      | integer specifying which log-fold-change to be plotted in the case of testing multiple contrasts. Only used for the DGELRT method with multiple contrasts.   |
| adjust.method | character string passed to <code>decideTests</code> specifying p-value adjustment method. Only used when status is NULL. See <code>decideTests</code> for details.   |
| p.value       | numeric value between 0 and 1 giving the desired size of the test. Only used and passed to <code>decideTests</code> when status is NULL.   |
| ...           | other arguments are passed to <code>plotWithHighlights</code> .  |

## Details

A mean-difference plot (MD-plot) is a plot of log fold changes (differences) versus average log values (means). The history of mean-difference plots and MA-plots is reviewed in Ritchie et al (2015).

For DGEList and SummarizedExperiment objects, a between-sample MD-plot is produced. Counts are first converted to log<sub>2</sub>-CPM values. An artificial array is produced by averaging all the samples other than the sample specified. A mean-difference plot is then producing from the specified sample and the artificial sample. This procedure reduces to an ordinary mean-difference plot when there are just two arrays total.



If object is an DGEGLM object, then the plot is an fitted model MD-plot in which the estimated coefficient is on the y-axis and the average logCPM value is on the x-axis. If object is an DGEEExact or DGELRT object, then the MD-plot displays the logFC vs the logCPM values from the results table.

The status vector can correspond to any grouping of the probes that is of interest. If object is a fitted model object, then status vector is often used to indicate statistically significance, so that differentially expressed points are highlighted.

The status can be included as the component `object$genes$Status` instead of being passed as an argument to `plotMD`.

See [plotWithHighlights](#) for how to set colors and graphics parameters for the highlighted and non-highlighted points.

### Value

A plot is created on the current graphics device.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth

### References

Ritchie, ME, Phipson, B, Wu, D, Hu, Y, Law, CW, Shi, W, and Smyth, GK (2015). limma powers differential expression analyses for RNA-sequencing and microarray studies. *Nucleic Acids Research* Volume 43, e47. doi:10.1093/nar/gkv007

### See Also

`plotSmear`

The driver function for `plotMD` is [plotWithHighlights](#).

---

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| plotMDS.DGEList | <i>Multidimensional scaling plot of distances between digital gene expression profiles</i> |
|-----------------|--|

---

### Description

Plot samples on a two-dimensional scatterplot so that distances on the plot approximate the expression differences between the samples.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
plotMDS(x, top = 500, labels = NULL, pch = NULL, cex = 1,
        dim.plot = c(1,2), gene.selection = "pairwise", xlab = NULL, ylab = NULL,
        method = "logFC", prior.count = 2, plot = TRUE, var.explained = TRUE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>x</code>              | a DGEList or SummarizedExperiment object.   |
| <code>top</code>            | number of top genes used to calculate pairwise distances.   |
| <code>labels</code>         | character vector of sample names or labels. If <code>x</code> has no column names, then defaults the index of the samples.  |
| <code>pch</code>            | plotting symbol or symbols. See <a href="#">points</a> for possible values. Ignored if <code>labels</code> is non-NULL.   |
| <code>cex</code>            | numeric vector of plot symbol expansions. See <a href="#">text</a> for possible values.   |
| <code>dim.plot</code>       | which two dimensions should be plotted, numeric vector of length two.   |
| <code>gene.selection</code> | character, "pairwise" to choose the top genes separately for each pairwise comparison between the samples, or "common" to select the same genes for all comparisons. Only used when <code>method="logFC"</code> . |
| <code>xlab</code>           | x-axis label  |
| <code>ylab</code>           | y-axis label  |
| <code>method</code>         | method used to compute distances. Possible values are "logFC" or "bcv". Note the "bcv" method is scheduled to be removed in a future version of edgeR.  |
| <code>prior.count</code>    | average prior count to be added to observation to shrink the estimated log-fold-changes towards zero. Only used when <code>method="logFC"</code> .  |
| <code>plot</code>           | logical. If TRUE then a plot is created on the current graphics device.   |
| <code>var.explained</code>  | logical. If TRUE then the percentage variation explained is included in the axis labels.  |
| <code>...</code>            | any other arguments are passed to plot.   |

**Details**

The default method (`method="logFC"`) is to convert the counts to log-counts-per-million using `cpm` and to pass these to the `limma plotMDS` function. This method calculates distances between samples based on  $\log_2$  fold changes. See the [plotMDS help page](#) for details.

The alternative method (`method="bcv"`) calculates distances based on biological coefficient of variation. A set of top genes are chosen that have largest biological variation between the libraries (those with largest genewise dispersion treating all libraries as one group). Then the distance between each pair of libraries (columns) is the biological coefficient of variation (square root of the common dispersion) between those two libraries alone, using the top genes. Beware that the "bcv" method is slow when the number of samples is large. The "bcv" method is in general much less used than "logFC" and is scheduled to be removed in a future version of edgeR.

The number of genes (`top`) chosen for this exercise should roughly correspond to the number of differentially expressed genes with materially large fold-changes. The default setting of 500 genes is widely effective and suitable for routine use, but a smaller value might be chosen for when the samples are distinguished by a specific focused molecular pathway. Very large values (greater than 1000) are not usually so effective.

**Value**

An object of class `MDS` is invisibly returned and (if `plot=TRUE`) a plot is created on the current graphics device.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen, Mark Robinson and Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[plotMDS](#), [cmdscale](#), [as.dist](#)

**Examples**

```
# Simulate DGE data for 1000 genes and 6 samples.
# Samples are in two groups
# First 200 genes are differentially expressed in second group

ngenes <- 1000
nlib <- 6
counts <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*nlib, size=1/10, mu=20),ngenes,nlib)
rownames(counts) <- paste("gene",1:ngenes, sep=".")
group <- gl(2,3,labels=c("Grp1","Grp2"))
counts[1:200,group=="Grp2"] <- counts[1:200,group=="Grp2"] + 10
y <- DGEList(counts,group=group)
y <- normLibSizes(y)

# without labels, indexes of samples are plotted.
col <- as.numeric(group)
mds <- plotMDS(y, top=200, col=col)

# or labels can be provided, here group indicators:
plotMDS(mds, col=col, labels=group)
```

---

plotMeanVar2

*Plot Mean-Variance Relationship in DGE Data Using Standardized Residuals*

---

**Description**

Group observations by size of the fitted value and plot average squared residual vs average fitted value.

**Usage**

```
plotMeanVar2(y, design = NULL, dispersion = 0, offset = 0, nbins = 100, make.plot = TRUE,
             xlab = "Mean", ylab = "Ave. binned standardized residual", ...)
```

**Arguments**

**y** numeric matrix of counts, each row represents one genes, each column represents one DGE library.

**design** numeric matrix giving the design matrix of the GLM. Assumed to be full column rank. Defaults to a intercept column.

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>dispersion</code> | numeric scalar or vector giving the dispersion parameter for each GLM. Can be a scalar giving one value for all genes, or a vector of length equal to the number of genes giving genewise dispersions.                     |
| <code>offset</code>     | numeric vector or matrix giving the offset that is to be included in the log-linear model predictor. Can be a vector of length equal to the number of libraries, or a matrix of the same size as <code>y</code> .          |
| <code>nbins</code>      | scalar giving the number of bins (formed by using the quantiles of the genewise mean expression levels) for which to compute average means and variances for exploring the mean-variance relationship. Default is 100 bins |
| <code>make.plot</code>  | logical, whether or not to plot the mean standardized residual for binned data (binned on expression level). Provides a visualization of the mean-variance relationship. Default is TRUE.                                  |
| <code>xlab</code>       | character string giving the label for the x-axis. Standard graphical parameter. If left as the default, then the x-axis label will be set to "Mean".   |
| <code>ylab</code>       | character string giving the label for the y-axis. Standard graphical parameter. If left as the default, then the y-axis label will be set to "Ave. binned standardized residual".  |
| <code>...</code>        | other arguments are passed to <code>plot</code>  |

### Details

This function explores the mean-variance relationship in count data. The function fits a Poisson or NB GLM model to each gene using the appropriate design matrix and computes squared ordinary residuals. The residuals are standardized by the leverages but not by model variances. The fitted values are divided into `nbins` bins and the mean fitted value and mean squared residual is computed for each bin.

This function is similar in purpose to `plotMeanVar` but uses standardized residuals instead of pooled variances.

### Value

Produces a mean-variance plot and returns a list with the following component:

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <code>mean</code> | numeric vector of average fitted values for bins         |
| <code>var</code>  | numeric vector of the average squared residuals for bins |

### Author(s)

Davis McCarthy and Gordon Smyth

### See Also

[plotMeanVar](#).

[plotMDS.DGEList](#), [plotSmear](#), [plotMD.DGEList](#) and [plotBCV](#) provide other ways to visualize DGE data.

**Examples**

```
# Example with Poisson data
log2mu <- seq(from=0,to=10,length=1000)
y <- matrix(rpois(4*1000,lambda=2^log2mu),1000,4)
binned <- plotMeanVar2(y)
abline(0,1)
```

plotQLDisp

*Plot the quasi-dispersion***Description**

Plot the genewise quasi-dispersion against the gene abundance (in log2 counts per million).

**Usage**

```
plotQLDisp(glmfit, xlab="Average Log2 CPM", ylab="Quarter-Root Mean Deviance", pch=16,
            cex=0.2, col.shrunk="red", col.trend="blue", col.raw="black", ...)
```

**Arguments**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| glmfit     | a DGEGLM object produced by <a href="#">glmQLFit</a> .                     |
| xlab       | label for the x-axis.  |
| ylab       | label for the y-axis.  |
| pch        | the plotting symbol. See <a href="#">points</a> for more details.          |
| cex        | plot symbol expansion factor. See <a href="#">points</a> for more details. |
| col.shrunk | color of the points representing the squeezed quasi-dispersions.           |
| col.trend  | color of line showing dispersion trend.                                    |
| col.raw    | color of points showing the unshrunk dispersions.                          |
| ...        | any other arguments are passed to plot.                                    |

**Details**

This function displays the quarter-root of the quasi-dispersions for all genes, before and after shrinkage towards a trend. If `glmfit` was constructed without an abundance trend, the function instead plots a horizontal line (of colour `col.trend`) at the common value towards which dispersions are shrunk. The quarter-root transformation is applied to improve visibility for dispersions around unity.

**Value**

A plot is created on the current graphics device.

**Author(s)**

Aaron Lun, Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth, Yunshun Chen.

## References

Chen Y, Lun ATL, and Smyth, GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using Rsubread and the edgeR quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438. <https://f1000research.com/articles/5-1438>

## Examples

```
nbdisp <- 1/rchisq(1000, df=10)
y <- DGEList(matrix(rnbinom(6000, size = 1/nbdisp, mu = 10),1000,6))
design <- model.matrix(~factor(c(1,1,1,2,2,2)))
y <- estimateDisp(y, design)

fit <- glmQLFit(y, design)
plotQLDisp(fit)

fit <- glmQLFit(y, design, abundance.trend=FALSE)
plotQLDisp(fit)
```

---

plotSmear

*Smear plot*

---

## Description

Make a mean-difference plot of two libraries of count data with smearing of points with very low counts, especially those that are zero for one of the columns.

## Usage

```
plotSmear(object, pair=NULL, de.tags=NULL, xlab="Average logCPM", ylab="logFC", pch=19,
          cex=0.2, smearWidth=0.5, panel.first=grid(), smooth.scatter=FALSE, lowess=FALSE, ...)
```

## Arguments

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| object  | DGEList, DGEEexact or DGELRT object containing data to produce an MA-plot.   |
| pair    | pair of experimental conditions to plot (if NULL, the first two conditions are used). Ignored if object is a DGELRT object.  |
| de.tags | rownames for genes identified as being differentially expressed; use exactTest or glmLRT to identify DE genes. Note that ‘tag’ and ‘gene’ are synonymous here.                                   |
| xlab    | x-label of plot  |
| ylab    | y-label of plot  |
| pch     | plotting character. Can be a single value or a vector of length nrow(object). Default value of 19 gives a round point.   |
| cex     | character expansion factor, numerical value giving the amount by which plotting text and symbols should be magnified relative to the default; default cex=0.2 to make the plotted points smaller |

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| smearWidth     | width of the smear  |
| panel.first    | an expression to be evaluated after the plot axes are set up but before any plotting takes place; the default <code>grid()</code> draws a background grid to aid interpretation of the plot                       |
| smooth.scatter | logical, whether to produce a 'smooth scatter' plot using the <code>KernSmooth::smoothScatter</code> function or just a regular scatter plot; default is <code>FALSE</code> , i.e. produce a regular scatter plot |
| lowess         | logical, indicating whether or not to add a lowess curve to the MA-plot to give an indication of any trend in the log-fold change with log-concentration  |
| ...            | further arguments passed on to <code>plot</code>  |

### Details

`plotSmear` produces a type of mean-difference plot (or MA plot) with a special representation (smearing) of log-ratios that are infinite. `plotSmear` resolves the problem of plotting genes that have a total count of zero for one of the groups by adding the 'smear' of points at low A value. The points to be smeared are identified as being equal to the minimum estimated concentration in one of the two groups. The smear is created by using random uniform numbers of width `smearWidth` to the left of the minimum A. `plotSmear` also allows easy highlighting of differentially expressed (DE) genes.

### Value

Invisibly returns the x and y coordinates of the plotted points, and a plot is created on the current device.

### Author(s)

Mark Robinson created the original concept of smearing the infinite log-fold-changes.

### See Also

[maPlot](#), [plotMD.DGEList](#)

### Examples

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(10000,mu=5,size=2),ncol=4)
d <- DGEList(counts=y, group=rep(1:2,each=2), lib.size=colSums(y))
rownames(d$counts) <- paste("gene",1:nrow(d$counts),sep=".")
d <- estimateCommonDisp(d)
plotSmear(d)

# find differential expression
de <- exactTest(d)

# highlighting the top 500 most DE genes
de.genes <- rownames(topTags(de, n=500)$table)
plotSmear(d, de.tags=de.genes)
```

---

plotSpliceDGE                      *Differential splicing plot*

---

### Description

Plot relative log-fold changes by exons for the specified gene and highlight the significantly spliced exons.

### Usage

```
plotSpliceDGE(lrt, geneid=NULL, genecolname=NULL, rank=1L, FDR=0.05)
```

### Arguments

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| lrt         | DGELRT object produced by diffSpliceDGE.                                     |
| geneid      | character string, ID of the gene to plot.                                    |
| genecolname | column name of lrt\$genes containing gene IDs. Defaults to lrt\$genecolname. |
| rank        | integer, if geneid=NULL then this ranked gene will be plotted.               |
| FDR         | numeric, mark exons with false discovery rate less than this cutoff.         |

### Details

Plot relative log<sub>2</sub>-fold-changes by exon for the specified gene. The relative logFC is the difference between the exon's logFC and the overall logFC for the gene, as computed by diffSpliceDGE. The significantly spliced individual exons are highlighted as red dots. The size of the red dots are weighted by its significance.

### Value

A plot is created on the current graphics device.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Yifang Hu and Gordon Smyth

### See Also

[diffSpliceDGE](#), [topSpliceDGE](#).



---

predFC *Predictive log-fold changes*

---

### Description

Computes estimated coefficients for a NB glm in such a way that the log-fold-changes are shrunk towards zero.

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
predFC(y, design, prior.count=0.125, offset=NULL, dispersion=NULL,
       weights=NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
predFC(y, design, prior.count=0.125, offset=NULL, dispersion=NULL,
       weights=NULL, ...)
## Default S3 method:
predFC(y, design, prior.count=0.125, offset=NULL, dispersion=0,
       weights=NULL, ...)
```

### Arguments

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| y           | a matrix of counts, or a DGEList object, or a SummarizedExperiment object   |
| design      | the design matrix for the experiment  |
| prior.count | the average prior count to be added to each observation. Larger values produce more shrinkage.  |
| offset      | numeric vector or matrix giving the offset in the log-linear model predictor, as for <a href="#">glmFit</a> . Usually equal to log library sizes. |
| dispersion  | numeric vector of negative binomial dispersions.  |
| weights     | optional numeric matrix giving observation weights  |
| ...         | other arguments are passed to <a href="#">glmFit</a> .  |

### Details

This function computes predictive log-fold changes (pfc) for a NB GLM. The pfc are posterior Bayesian estimators of the true log-fold-changes. They are predictive of values that might be replicated in a future experiment.

Specifically, the function adds a small prior count to each observation before fitting the GLM (see [addPriorCount](#) for details). The actual prior count that is added is proportion to the library size. This has the effect that any log-fold-change that was zero prior to augmentation remains zero and non-zero log-fold-changes are shrunk towards zero.

The prior counts can be viewed as equivalent to a prior belief that the log-fold changes are small, and the output can be viewed as posterior log-fold-changes from this Bayesian viewpoint. The output coefficients are called *predictive* log fold-changes because, depending on the prior, they may be a better prediction of the true log fold-changes than the raw estimates.

Log-fold changes for genes with low counts are shrunk more than those for genes with high counts. In particular, infinite log-fold-changes arising from zero counts are avoided. The exact degree to which this is done depends on the negative binomial dispersion.

### Value

Numeric matrix of (shrunk) linear model coefficients on the log2 scale.

### Author(s)

Belinda Phipson and Gordon Smyth

### References

Phipson, B. (2013). *Empirical Bayes modelling of expression profiles and their associations*. PhD Thesis. University of Melbourne, Australia. <http://hdl.handle.net/11343/38162>

### See Also

[glmFit](#), [exactTest](#), [addPriorCount](#)

### Examples

```
# generate counts for a two group experiment with n=2 in each group and 100 genes
disp <- 0.1
y <- matrix(rnbinom(400,size=1/disp,mu=4), nrow=100, ncol=4)
y <- DGEList(y, group=c(1,1,2,2))
design <- model.matrix(~group, data=y$samples)

#estimate the predictive log fold changes
predlfc <- predFC(y, design, dispersion=disp, prior.count=1)
logfc <- predFC(y,design,dispersion=disp, prior.count=0)
logfc.truncated <- pmax(pmin(logfc,100),-100)

#plot predFC's vs logFC's
plot(predlfc[,2], logfc.truncated[,2],
      xlab="Predictive log fold changes", ylab="Raw log fold changes")
abline(a=0,b=1)
```

---

processAmplicons

*Process FASTQ files from pooled genetic sequencing screens*

---

### Description

Given a list of sample-specific index (barcode) sequences and hairpin/sgRNA-specific sequences from an amplicon sequencing screen, generate a DGEList of counts from the raw FASTQ files containing the sequence reads. The position of the index sequences and hairpin/sgRNA sequences is considered variable, with the hairpin/sgRNA sequences assumed to be located after the index sequences in the read.

**Usage**

```
processAmplicons(readfile, readfile2 = NULL, barcodefile, hairpinfile,
                 allowMismatch = FALSE, barcodeMismatchBase = 1,
                 hairpinMismatchBase = 2, dualIndexForwardRead = FALSE,
                 verbose = FALSE, barcodesInHeader = FALSE,
                 hairpinBeforeBarcode = FALSE, plotPositions = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| readfile             | character vector giving one or more FASTQ filenames. Must be uncompressed text files.  |
| readfile2            | optional character vector giving one or more FASTQ filenames for reverse read. Must be uncompressed text files.  |
| barcodefile          | filename containing sample-specific barcode IDs and sequences. File may be gzipped.  |
| hairpinfile          | filename containing hairpin/sgRNA-specific IDs and sequences. File may be gzipped.   |
| allowMismatch        | logical, indicates whether sequence mismatch is allowed.   |
| barcodeMismatchBase  | maximum number of base sequence mismatches allowed in a barcode sequence when allowMismatch is TRUE.   |
| hairpinMismatchBase  | maximum number of base sequence mismatches allowed in a hairpin/sgRNA sequence when allowMismatch is TRUE.   |
| dualIndexForwardRead | logical, indicates if forward reads contains a second barcode sequence (must be present in barcodefile) that should be matched.  |
| verbose              | if TRUE, output program progress.  |
| barcodesInHeader     | logical, indicates if barcode sequences should be matched in the header (sequence identifier) of each read (i.e. the first of every group of four lines in the FASTQ files).   |
| hairpinBeforeBarcode | logical, indicates that hairpin sequences appear before barcode sequences in each read. Setting this to TRUE will allow hairpins to exist anywhere in a read irrespective of barcode position. Leaving as FALSE will improve performance if hairpins are positioned after barcode sequences.   |
| plotPositions        | logical, indicates if a density plot displaying the position of each barcode and hairpin/sgRNA sequence in the reads should be created. If dualIndexForwardRead is TRUE or readfile2 is not NULL, plotPositions will generate two density plots, side by side, indicating the positions of the first barcodes and hairpins in the first plot, and second barcodes in the second. |

## Details

The `processAmplicons` function allows for hairpins/sgRNAs/sample index sequences to be in variable positions within each read.

The input barcode file and hairpin/sgRNA files are tab-separated text files with at least two columns (named 'ID' and 'Sequences') containing the sample or hairpin/sgRNA IDs and a second column indicating the sample index or hairpin/sgRNA sequences to be matched. If `dualIndexForwardRead` is TRUE, a third column 'Sequences2' is expected in the barcode file. If `readfile2` is specified, another column 'SequencesReverse' is expected in the barcode file. The barcode file may also contain a 'group' column that indicates which experimental group a sample belongs to. Additional columns in each file will be included in the respective `$samples` or `$genes` data.frames of the final `DGEList` object. These files, along with the FASTQ files, are assumed to be in the current working directory.

To compute the count matrix, matching to the given barcodes and hairpins/sgRNAs is conducted in two rounds. The first round looks for an exact sequence match for the given barcode sequences and hairpin/sgRNA sequences through the entire read, returning the first match found. If a match isn't found, the program performs a second round of matching which allows for sequence mismatches if `allowMismatch` is set to TRUE. The maximum number of mismatch bases in barcode and hairpin/sgRNA are specified by the parameters `barcodeMismatchBase` and `hairpinMismatchBase` respectively.

The program outputs a `DGEList` object, with a count matrix indicating the number of times each barcode and hairpin/sgRNA combination could be matched in reads from the input FASTQ files.

For further examples and data, refer to the case studies available from <https://bioinf.wehi.edu.au/shRNAseq/>.

The argument `hairpinBeforeBarcode` was introduced in edgeR release version 3.38.2 and developmental version 3.39.3. Previously the function expected the sequences in the FASTQ files to have a fixed structure as per Figure 1A of Dai et al (2014). The revised function can process reads where the hairpins/sgRNAs/sample index sequences are in variable positions within each read. When `plotPositions=TRUE` a density plot of the match positions is created to allow the user to assess whether they occur in the expected positions.

## Value

A `DGEList` object with following components:

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| <code>counts</code>   | read count matrix tallying up the number of reads with particular barcode and hairpin/sgRNA matches. Each row is a hairpin/sgRNA and each column is a sample. |
| <code>genes</code>    | In this case, hairpin/sgRNA-specific information (ID, sequences, corresponding target gene) may be recorded in this data.frame.                               |
| <code>lib.size</code> | auto-calculated column sum of the counts matrix.  |

## Note

This function replaced the earlier function `processHairpinReads` in edgeR 3.7.17.

## Author(s)

Oliver Voogd, Zhiyin Dai, Shian Su and Matthew Ritchie

**References**

Dai Z, Sheridan JM, Gearing, LJ, Moore, DL, Su, S, Wormald, S, Wilcox, S, O'Connor, L, Dickins, RA, Blewitt, ME, Ritchie, ME (2014). edgeR: a versatile tool for the analysis of shRNA-seq and CRISPR-Cas9 genetic screens. *F1000Research* 3, 95. doi:10.12688/f1000research.3928.2

---

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| q2qnbinom | <i>Quantile to Quantile Mapping between Negative-Binomial Distributions</i> |
|-----------|---|

---

**Description**

Interpolated quantile to quantile mapping between negative-binomial distributions with the same dispersion but different means. The Poisson distribution is a special case.

**Usage**

```
q2qpois(x, input.mean, output.mean)
q2qnbinom(x, input.mean, output.mean, dispersion=0)
```

**Arguments**

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| x           | numeric matrix of counts.  |
| input.mean  | population means for x. Can be a vector of length nrow(x) or a matrix of same dimensions as x.                                 |
| output.mean | population means for the output values. Can be a vector of length nrow(x) or a matrix of same dimensions as x.                 |
| dispersion  | negative binomial dispersion values. Can be a unit vector, or a vector of length nrow(x), or a matrix of same dimensions as x. |

**Details**

This function finds the quantile with the same left and right tail probabilities relative to the output mean as x has relative to the input mean. q2qpois is equivalent to q2qnbinom with dispersion=0.

In principle, q2qnbinom gives similar results to calling pnbinom followed by qnbinom as in the example below. However this function avoids infinite values arising from rounding errors and does appropriate interpolation to return continuous values.

q2qnbinom is called by [equalizeLibSizes](#) to perform quantile-to-quantile normalization.

**Value**

numeric matrix of same dimensions as x, with output.mean as the new nominal population mean.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[equalizeLibSizes](#)

**Examples**

```
x <- 15
input.mean <- 10
output.mean <- 20
dispersion <- 0.1
q2qnbinom(x, input.mean, output.mean, dispersion)

# Similar in principle:
qnbinom(pnbinom(x, mu=input.mean, size=1/dispersion), mu=output.mean, size=1/dispersion)
```

---

read10X

*Read 10X Genomics Files*

---

**Description**

Reads 10X Genomics files containing single-cell RNA-seq UMI counts in Matrix Market format.

**Usage**

```
read10X(mtx = NULL, genes = NULL, barcodes = NULL, path = ".", DGEList = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| mtx      | name of mtx file containing counts in Matrix Exchange Format. Defaults to matrix.mtx or matrix.mtx.gz.             |
| genes    | name of file containing gene IDs and names. Defaults to features.tsv or genes.tsv or gzipped versions of the same. |
| barcodes | optional name of file containing barcodes. Defaults to "barcodes.tsv" or barcodes.tsv.gz.                          |
| path     | character string giving the directory containing the files. Defaults to the current working directory.             |
| DGEList  | logical. If TRUE, a DGEList will be returned, otherwise an unclassed list is returned.                             |

**Details**

This function reads output files created by the 10X Genomics Cellranger pipeline, see <https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/software/pipelines/latest/output/matrices>. The UMI counts are assembled into an integer matrix in R with accompanying gene IDs and gene symbols. The results are returned as either a DGEList or an ordinary list.

The files mtx, genes and barcodes can be provided in either gzipped or unzipped versions.

This function creates an ordinary matrix of counts. To read the counts instead into a sparse matrix format, the read10xResults function in the scater package is an alternative.

**Value**

Either a `DGEList` object (if `DGEList=TRUE`) or an ordinary list with the following components:

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>counts</code>  | matrix of counts.  |
| <code>genes</code>   | data.frame counting gene symbols.  |
| <code>samples</code> | data.frame containing information about each cell. This will be omitted if <code>barcodes=NULL</code> and <code>DGEList=FALSE</code> . |

The only difference between the `DGEList` or list formats is that the `DGEList` adds some extra columns to the `samples` data.frame.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

`read10xResults` in the `scater` package.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
GEO <- "ftp://ftp.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/samples/GSM2510nnn/GSM2510617/suppl/"
GEOmtx <- paste0(GEO,"GSM2510617_P7-matrix.mtx.gz")
GEOgenes <- paste0(GEO,"GSM2510617_P7-genes.tsv.gz")
download.file(GEOmtx,"matrix.mtx.gz")
download.file(GEOgenes,"genes.tsv.gz")
y <- read10X("matrix.mtx.gz", "genes.tsv.gz")

## End(Not run)
```

---

readBismark2DGE

*Read Bismark Coverage Files*

---

**Description**

Read Bismark coverage files containing methylated and unmethylated read counts for CpG loci and create `DGEList`.

**Usage**

```
readBismark2DGE(files, sample.names=NULL, readr=TRUE, verbose=TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| files        | character vector of file names.   |
| sample.names | character vector of sample names. If NULL, sample names will be extracted from the file names.    |
| readr        | logical. If TRUE, readr package is used to read the coverage files, otherwise read.delim is used. |
| verbose      | logical. If TRUE, read progress messages are send to standard output.                             |

**Details**

This function reads tab-delimited coverage files output by Bismark software. Counts from multiple files are collated into a `DGEList` object.

**Value**

A `DGEList` object with a row for each unique genomic loci found in the files and two columns (containing methylated and unmethylated counts) for each sample.

**Note**

This function represents genomic loci as integers, so the largest locus position must be less than the maximum integer in R (about  $2e9$ ). The number of chromosomes times the largest locus position must be less than  $1e16$ .

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**References**

Chen, Y, Pal, B, Visvader, JE, Smyth, GK (2017). Differential methylation analysis of reduced representation bisulfite sequencing experiments using edgeR. *F1000Research* 6, 2055. <https://f1000research.com/articles/6-2055>

---

readDGE

*Read and Merge a Set of Files Containing Count Data*

---

**Description**

Reads and merges a set of text files containing gene expression counts.

**Usage**

```
readDGE(files, path=NULL, columns=c(1,2), group=NULL, labels=NULL, ...)
```



## Arguments

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| files   | character vector of filenames, or a data.frame of sample information containing a column called files.  |
| path    | character string giving the directory containing the files. Defaults to the current working directory.  |
| columns | numeric vector stating which columns of the input files contain the gene names and counts respectively. |
| group   | optional vector or factor indicating the experimental group to which each file belongs.                 |
| labels  | character vector giving short names to associate with the files. Defaults to the file names.            |
| ...     | other arguments are passed to <a href="#">read.delim</a> .  |

## Details

Each file is assumed to contain digital gene expression data for one genomic sample or count library, with gene identifiers in the first column and counts in the second column. Gene identifiers are assumed to be unique and not repeated in any one file. The function creates a combined table of counts with rows for genes and columns for samples. A count of zero will be entered for any gene that was not found in any particular sample.

By default, the files are assumed to be tab-delimited and to contain column headings. Other file formats can be handled by adding arguments to be passed to [read.delim](#). For example, use `header=FALSE` if there are no column headings and use `sep=","` to read a comma-separated file.

Instead of being a vector, the argument `files` can be a data.frame containing all the necessary sample information. In that case, the filenames and group identifiers can be given as columns `files` and `group` respectively, and the labels can be given as the `row.names` of the data.frame.

## Value

A [DGEList](#) object containing a matrix of counts, with a row for each unique tag found in the input files and a column for each input file.

## Author(s)

Mark Robinson and Gordon Smyth

## See Also

See [read.delim](#) for other possible arguments that can be accepted.  
[DGEList-class](#), [DGEList](#).

## Examples

```
# Read all .txt files from current working directory

## Not run: files <- dir(pattern="*\\.txt$")
RG <- readDGE(files)
## End(Not run)
```

roast.DGEGLM

*Self-contained Gene Set Tests for Digital Gene Expression Data***Description**

Rotation gene set testing for Negative Binomial generalized linear models.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
fry(y, index = NULL, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), geneid = NULL,
    sort = "directional", ...)

## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
roast(y, index = NULL, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), geneid = NULL,
    set.statistic = "mean", gene.weights = NULL, nrot = 1999, ...)

## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
mroast(y, index = NULL, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), geneid = NULL,
    set.statistic = "mean", gene.weights = NULL, nrot = 1999,
    adjust.method = "BH", midp = TRUE, sort = "directional", ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>             | DGEGLM object.  |
| <code>index</code>         | index vector specifying which rows (probes) of <code>y</code> are in the test set. Can be a vector of integer indices, or a logical vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> , or a vector of gene IDs corresponding to entries in <code>geneid</code> . Alternatively it can be a data.frame with the first column containing the index vector and the second column containing directional gene weights. For <code>mroast</code> or <code>fry</code> , <code>index</code> is a list of index vectors or a list of data.frames. |
| <code>design</code>        | the design matrix. Defaults to <code>y\$design</code> or, if that is <code>NULL</code> , to <code>model.matrix(~y\$samples\$group)</code> .   |
| <code>contrast</code>      | contrast for which the test is required. Can be an integer specifying a column of <code>design</code> , or the name of a column of <code>design</code> , or a numeric contrast vector of length equal to the number of columns of <code>design</code> .   |
| <code>geneid</code>        | gene identifiers corresponding to the rows of <code>y</code> . Can be either a vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> or the name of the column of <code>y\$genes</code> containing the gene identifiers. Defaults to <code>rownames(y)</code> .   |
| <code>set.statistic</code> | summary set statistic. Possibilities are "mean", "floormean", "mean50" or "msq".  |
| <code>gene.weights</code>  | numeric vector of directional (positive or negative) genewise weights. For <code>mroast</code> or <code>fry</code> , this vector must have length equal to <code>nrow(y)</code> . For <code>roast</code> , can be of length <code>nrow(y)</code> or of length equal to the number of genes in the test set.   |
| <code>nrot</code>          | number of rotations used to compute the p-values.   |
| <code>adjust.method</code> | method used to adjust the p-values for multiple testing. See <a href="#">p.adjust</a> for possible values.  |

|      |  |
|------|--|
| midp | logical, should mid-p-values be used in instead of ordinary p-values when adjusting for multiple testing?                                  |
| sort | character, whether to sort output table by directional p-value ("directional"), non-directional p-value ("mixed"), or not at all ("none"). |
| ...  | other arguments are currently ignored.   |

## Details

These functions perform self-contained gene set tests against the null hypothesis that none of the genes in the set are differentially expressed. `fry` is the recommended function in the edgeR context.

The roast gene set test was proposed by Wu et al (2010) for microarray data and the `roast` and `mroast` methods documented here extend the test to digital gene expression data. The `roast` method uses residual space rotations instead of permutations to obtain p-values, a technique that take advantage of the full generality of linear models. The negative binomial count data is converted to approximate normal deviates by computing mid-p quantile residuals (Dunn and Smyth, 1996; Routledge, 1994) under the null hypothesis that the contrast is zero, and the normal deviates are then passed to the limma `roast` function. See `roast` for more description of the test and for a complete list of possible arguments. `mroast` is similar but performs roast tests for multiple of gene sets instead of just one.

The `fry` method documented here similarly generalizes the fry gene set test for microarray data. `fry` is recommended over `roast` or `mroast` for count data because, in this context, it is equivalent to `mroast` but with an infinite number of rotations.

## Value

`roast` produces an object of class `Roast`. See `roast` for details.

`mroast` and `fry` produce a data.frame. See `mroast` for details.

## Author(s)

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

## References

Dunn, PK, and Smyth, GK (1996). Randomized quantile residuals. *J. Comput. Graph. Statist.*, 5, 236-244. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/residual.html>

Routledge, RD (1994). Practicing safe statistics with the mid-p. *Canadian Journal of Statistics* 22, 103-110.

Wu, D, Lim, E, Francois Vaillant, F, Asselin-Labat, M-L, Visvader, JE, and Smyth, GK (2010). ROAST: rotation gene set tests for complex microarray experiments. *Bioinformatics* 26, 2176-2182. <http://bioinformatics.oxfordjournals.org/content/26/17/2176>

## See Also

[roast](#), [camera.DGEGLM](#)

**Examples**

```

mu <- matrix(10, 100, 4)
group <- factor(c(0,0,1,1))
design <- model.matrix(~group)

# First set of 10 genes that are genuinely differentially expressed
iset1 <- 1:10
mu[iset1,3:4] <- mu[iset1,3:4]+10

# Second set of 10 genes are not DE
iset2 <- 11:20

# Generate counts and create a DGEList object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(100*4, mu=mu, size=10),100,4)
y <- DGEList(counts=y, group=group)

# Estimate dispersions
fit <- glmQLFit(y, design, legacy=FALSE)

roast(fit, iset1, design, contrast=2)
mroast(fit, iset1, design, contrast=2)
mroast(fit, list(set1=iset1, set2=iset2), design, contrast=2)

```

---

roast.DGEList

*Self-contained Gene Set Tests for Digital Gene Expression Data*


---

**Description**

Rotation gene set testing for Negative Binomial generalized linear models.

**Usage**

```

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
fry(y, index = NULL, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), geneid = NULL,
    sort = "directional", ...)

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
roast(y, index = NULL, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), geneid = NULL,
    set.statistic = "mean", gene.weights = NULL, nrot = 1999, ...)

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
mroast(y, index = NULL, design = NULL, contrast = ncol(design), geneid = NULL,
    set.statistic = "mean", gene.weights = NULL, nrot = 1999,
    adjust.method = "BH", midp = TRUE, sort = "directional", ...)

```

**Arguments**

y DGEList object.

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>index</code>         | index vector specifying which rows (probes) of <code>y</code> are in the test set. Can be a vector of integer indices, or a logical vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> , or a vector of gene IDs corresponding to entries in <code>geneid</code> . Alternatively it can be a data.frame with the first column containing the index vector and the second column containing directional gene weights. For <code>mroast</code> or <code>fry</code> , <code>index</code> is a list of index vectors or a list of data.frames. |
| <code>design</code>        | the design matrix. Defaults to <code>y\$design</code> or, failing that, to <code>model.matrix(~y\$samples\$group)</code> .  |
| <code>contrast</code>      | contrast for which the test is required. Can be an integer specifying a column of <code>design</code> , or the name of a column of <code>design</code> , or a numeric contrast vector of length equal to the number of columns of <code>design</code> .   |
| <code>geneid</code>        | gene identifiers corresponding to the rows of <code>y</code> . Can be either a vector of length <code>nrow(y)</code> or the name of the column of <code>y\$genes</code> containing the gene identifiers. Defaults to <code>rownames(y)</code> .   |
| <code>set.statistic</code> | summary set statistic. Possibilities are "mean", "floormean", "mean50" or "msq".  |
| <code>gene.weights</code>  | numeric vector of directional (positive or negative) genewise weights. For <code>mroast</code> or <code>fry</code> , this vector must have length equal to <code>nrow(y)</code> . For <code>roast</code> , can be of length <code>nrow(y)</code> or of length equal to the number of genes in the test set.   |
| <code>nrot</code>          | number of rotations used to compute the p-values.   |
| <code>adjust.method</code> | method used to adjust the p-values for multiple testing. See <a href="#">p.adjust</a> for possible values.  |
| <code>midp</code>          | logical, should mid-p-values be used in instead of ordinary p-values when adjusting for multiple testing?   |
| <code>sort</code>          | character, whether to sort output table by directional p-value ("directional"), non-directional p-value ("mixed"), or not at all ("none").  |
| <code>...</code>           | other arguments are currently ignored.  |

### Details

These functions perform self-contained gene set tests against the null hypothesis that none of the genes in the set are differentially expressed. `fry` is the recommended function in the edgeR context. The roast gene set test was proposed by Wu et al (2010) for microarray data and the `roast` and `mroast` methods documented here extend the test to digital gene expression data. The `roast` method uses residual space rotations instead of permutations to obtain p-values, a technique that take advantage of the full generality of linear models. The negative binomial count data is converted to approximate normal deviates by computing mid-p quantile residuals (Dunn and Smyth, 1996; Routledge, 1994) under the null hypothesis that the contrast is zero, and the normal deviates are then passed to the limma [roast](#) function. See [roast](#) for more description of the test and for a complete list of possible arguments. `mroast` is similar but performs roast tests for multiple of gene sets instead of just one.

The `fry` method documented here similarly generalizes the `fry` gene set test for microarray data. `fry` is recommended over `roast` or `mroast` for count data because, in this context, it is equivalent to `mroast` but with an infinite number of rotations.

### Value

`roast` produces an object of class [Roast](#). See [roast](#) for details.

`mroast` and `fry` produce a data.frame. See [mroast](#) for details.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

**References**

- Dunn, PK, and Smyth, GK (1996). Randomized quantile residuals. *J. Comput. Graph. Statist.*, 5, 236-244. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/residual.html>
- Routledge, RD (1994). Practicing safe statistics with the mid-p. *Canadian Journal of Statistics* 22, 103-110.
- Wu, D, Lim, E, Francois Vaillant, F, Asselin-Labat, M-L, Visvader, JE, and Smyth, GK (2010). ROAST: rotation gene set tests for complex microarray experiments. *Bioinformatics* 26, 2176-2182. <http://bioinformatics.oxfordjournals.org/content/26/17/2176>

**See Also**

[roast](#), [camera](#), [DGEList](#)

**Examples**

```
mu <- matrix(10, 100, 4)
group <- factor(c(0,0,1,1))
design <- model.matrix(~group)

# First set of 10 genes that are genuinely differentially expressed
iset1 <- 1:10
mu[iset1,3:4] <- mu[iset1,3:4]+10

# Second set of 10 genes are not DE
iset2 <- 11:20

# Generate counts and create a DGEList object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(100*4, mu=mu, size=10),100,4)
y <- DGEList(counts=y, group=group)

# Estimate dispersions
y <- estimateDisp(y, design)

roast(y, iset1, design, contrast=2)
mroast(y, iset1, design, contrast=2)
mroast(y, list(set1=iset1, set2=iset2), design, contrast=2)
```

**Description**

Romer gene set enrichment tests for Negative Binomial generalized linear models.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
romer(y, index, design=NULL, contrast=ncol(design), ...)
```

**Arguments**

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| y        | DGEGLM object.   |
| index    | list of indices specifying the rows of y in the gene sets. The list can be made using <a href="#">ids2indices</a> .  |
| design   | design matrix. Defaults to y\$design.  |
| contrast | contrast for which the test is required. Can be an integer specifying a column of design, or the name of a column of design, or else a contrast vector of length equal to the number of columns of design. |
| ...      | other arguments are passed to <a href="#">romer.default</a> . For example, the number of rotations nrot can be increased from the default of 9999 to increase the resolution of the p-values.              |

**Details**

The ROMER procedure described by Majewski et al (2010) is implemented in romer in the limma package. This romer method for DGEGLM objects makes the romer procedure available for count data such as RNA-seq data. The negative binomial count data is converted to approximate normal deviates by computing mid-p quantile residuals (Dunn and Smyth, 1996; Routledge, 1994) under the null hypothesis that the contrast is zero. The normal deviates are then passed to the romer function in limma. See [romer](#) for more description of the test and for a complete list of possible arguments.

**Value**

Numeric matrix giving p-values and the number of matched genes in each gene set. Rows correspond to gene sets. There are four columns giving the number of genes in the set and p-values for the alternative hypotheses up, down or mixed. See [romer](#) for details.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

**References**

- Majewski, IJ, Ritchie, ME, Phipson, B, Corbin, J, Pakusch, M, Ebert, A, Busslinger, M, Koseki, H, Hu, Y, Smyth, GK, Alexander, WS, Hilton, DJ, and Blewitt, ME (2010). Opposing roles of polycomb repressive complexes in hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. *Blood*, 116, 731-719. [doi:10.1182/blood.2009.12260760](https://doi.org/10.1182/blood.2009.12260760)
- Dunn, PK, and Smyth, GK (1996). Randomized quantile residuals. *J. Comput. Graph. Statist.*, 5, 236-244. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/residual.html>
- Routledge, RD (1994). Practicing safe statistics with the mid-p. *Canadian Journal of Statistics* 22, 103-110. [doi:10.2307/3315826](https://doi.org/10.2307/3315826)

**See Also**[romer](#)**Examples**

```

mu <- matrix(10, 100, 4)
group <- factor(c(0,0,1,1))
design <- model.matrix(~group)

# First set of 10 genes that are genuinely differentially expressed
iset1 <- 1:10
mu[iset1,3:4] <- mu[iset1,3:4]+20

# Second set of 10 genes are not DE
iset2 <- 11:20

# Generate counts and create a DGEList object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(100*4, mu=mu, size=10),100,4)
y <- DGEList(counts=y, group=group)

# Estimate dispersions
fit <- glmQLFit(y, design, legacy=FALSE)

romer(fit, iset1, design, contrast=2)
romer(fit, iset2, design, contrast=2)
romer(fit, list(set1=iset1, set2=iset2), design, contrast=2)

```

romer.DGEList

*Rotation Gene Set Enrichment for Digital Gene Expression Data***Description**

Romer gene set enrichment tests for Negative Binomial generalized linear models.

**Usage**

```

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
romer(y, index, design=NULL, contrast=ncol(design), ...)

```

**Arguments**

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| y        | DGEList object.  |
| index    | list of indices specifying the rows of y in the gene sets. The list can be made using <a href="#">ids2indices</a> .  |
| design   | design matrix. Defaults to y\$design or, failing that, to model.matrix(~y\$samples\$group).  |
| contrast | contrast for which the test is required. Can be an integer specifying a column of design, or the name of a column of design, or else a contrast vector of length equal to the number of columns of design. |



... other arguments are passed to `romer.default`. For example, the number of rotations `nrot` can be increased from the default of 9999 to increase the resolution of the p-values.

### Details

The ROMER procedure described by Majewski et al (2010) is implemented in `romer` in the `limma` package. This `romer` method for `DGEList` objects makes the `romer` procedure available for count data such as RNA-seq data. The negative binomial count data is converted to approximate normal deviates by computing mid-p quantile residuals (Dunn and Smyth, 1996; Routledge, 1994) under the null hypothesis that the contrast is zero. The normal deviates are then passed to the `romer` function in `limma`. See `romer` for more description of the test and for a complete list of possible arguments.

### Value

Numeric matrix giving p-values and the number of matched genes in each gene set. Rows correspond to gene sets. There are four columns giving the number of genes in the set and p-values for the alternative hypotheses up, down or mixed. See `romer` for details.

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

### References

- Majewski, IJ, Ritchie, ME, Phipson, B, Corbin, J, Pakusch, M, Ebert, A, Busslinger, M, Koseki, H, Hu, Y, Smyth, GK, Alexander, WS, Hilton, DJ, and Blewitt, ME (2010). Opposing roles of polycomb repressive complexes in hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. *Blood*, 116, 731-719. doi:10.1182/blood200912260760
- Dunn, PK, and Smyth, GK (1996). Randomized quantile residuals. *J. Comput. Graph. Statist.*, 5, 236-244. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/residual.html>
- Routledge, RD (1994). Practicing safe statistics with the mid-p. *Canadian Journal of Statistics* 22, 103-110. doi:10.2307/3315826

### See Also

`romer`

### Examples

```
mu <- matrix(10, 100, 4)
group <- factor(c(0,0,1,1))
design <- model.matrix(~group)

# First set of 10 genes that are genuinely differentially expressed
iset1 <- 1:10
mu[iset1,3:4] <- mu[iset1,3:4]+20

# Second set of 10 genes are not DE
```

```

iset2 <- 11:20

# Generate counts and create a DGEList object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(100*4, mu=mu, size=10),100,4)
y <- DGEList(counts=y, group=group)

# Estimate dispersions
y <- estimateDisp(y, design)

romer(y, iset1, design, contrast=2)
romer(y, iset2, design, contrast=2)
romer(y, list(set1=iset1, set2=iset2), design, contrast=2)

```

---

rowsum

*Sum Over Groups of Genes*


---

### Description

Condense the rows of a DGEList object so that counts are summed over specified groups of genes.

### Usage

```

## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
rowsum(x, group, reorder=FALSE, na.rm=FALSE, ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
rowsum(x, group, reorder=FALSE, na.rm=FALSE, ...)

```

### Arguments

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| x       | a DGEList object or a SummarizedExperiment object   |
| group   | a vector or factor giving the grouping, with one element per row of x. Missing values will be treated as another group and a warning will be given.             |
| reorder | if TRUE, then the row.names of the resulting DGEList will be in order of sort(unique(group)), if FALSE, they will be in the order that groups were encountered. |
| na.rm   | logical (TRUE or FALSE). Should NA (including NaN) values be discarded?   |
| ...     | other arguments are not currently used  |

### Details

If x is a SummarizedExperiment object, it is first converted into a DGEList object.

A new DGEList object is computed, with the same columns as x, but for which the rows correspond to the unique values of group. The counts for rows with the same group value are summed.

Columns of x\$genes will be retained in the output if they contain group-level annotation. Columns that vary within groups will be dropped.

**Value**

DGEList object with the same number of columns as `x` and rows corresponding to the unique values of `group`.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[rowsum](#) in the base package.

**Examples**

```
x <- DGEList(counts=matrix(1:8,4,2))
rowsum(x, group=c("A","A","B","B"))
```

---

scaleOffset

*Scale offsets*

---

**Description**

Ensures scale of offsets are consistent with library sizes.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
scaleOffset(y, offset, ...)
## Default S3 method:
scaleOffset(y, offset, ...)
```

**Arguments**

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>y</code>      | numeric vector or matrix of counts, or a DGEList object.   |
| <code>offset</code> | numeric vector or matrix of offsets to be scaled. If a vector, its length must equal to the length of <code>y</code> or the number of columns of <code>y</code> . If a matrix, its dimension must equal to the dimension of <code>y</code> . |
| <code>...</code>    | other arguments that are not currently used.   |

**Details**

`scaleOffset` ensures that the scale of offsets are consistent with library sizes. This is done by ensuring that the mean offset for each gene is the same as the mean log-library size. The length or dimensions of `offset` should be consistent with the number of libraries in `y`.

**Value**

scaleOffset.default returns a numeric vector if offset is a vector, a matrix if offset is a matrix or a CompressedMatrix object if offset is a CompressedMatrix. scaleOffset.DGEList computes the scaled offsets and store them in the offset component of the input DGEList object.

**Author(s)**

Aaron Lun, Yunshun Chen

**Examples**

```
y <- matrix(rnbinom(40,size=1,mu=100),10,4)
offset <- rnorm(4)
scaleOffset(y, offset)
```

---

SE2DGEList

*SummarizedExperiment to DGEList*

---

**Description**

Given any SummarizedExperiment data object, extract basic information needed and convert it into a DGEList object.

**Usage**

```
SE2DGEList(object)
```

**Arguments**

object            a SummarizedExperiment object. Must have counts in its assay component.

**Details**

This function takes a SummarizedExperiment data object as input. The counts of the assay component of the input SummarizedExperiment data object is extracted and used as the counts component of the output DGEList object. The rowRanges or rowData of the input is converted into a data.frame and used as genes in the output. The colData of the input is also converted into a data.frame and used as the sample information in the output.

**Value**

A DGEList object.

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

## Examples

```
## Not run:
library(SummarizedExperiment)
example(SummarizedExperiment)
y <- SE2DGEList(se)

## End(Not run)
```

---

Seurat2PB

*Seurat or SeuratObject class object to pseudo-bulk DGEList*

---

## Description

Given a Seurat or SeuratObject data object, create pseudo-bulk samples using the sample and cluster information and return a DGEList object.

## Usage

```
Seurat2PB(object, sample, cluster="seurat_clusters")
```

## Arguments

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| object  | a Seurat or SeuratObject class data object. Must have counts in its RNA assay.  |
| sample  | character specifying the column of object@meta.data that contains sample information of the single cell data. Must be one of the column names of object@meta.data.                  |
| cluster | character specifying the column of object@meta.data that contains single cell cluster information. Must be one of the column names of object@meta.data. Default to seurat_clusters. |

## Details

This function takes a Seurat or SeuratObject data object as input. It is assumed that the input data object contains raw RNA-seq read counts of multiple samples as well as cell clustering information (usually from a single cell integration analysis). The counts of the RNA assay of the input data object is first extracted. A pseudo-bulk count matrix is formed by aggregating the read counts of all the cells within the same cluster for each sample. The pseudo-bulk count matrix is then used as the counts component of the output DGEList object. The cluster and sample information of the pseudo-bulk counts is stored in the samples component. The row names of the input data object, together with other extra feature information (if any) found in the input, are stored in the genes component.

## Value

A DGEList object.

## Author(s)

Yunshun Chen

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
ngenes <- 1e3
ncells <- 1e3
sp <- paste0("sample", sample(1:2, ncells, replace=TRUE))
clst <- sample(1:3, ncells, replace=TRUE)

counts <- matrix(rnbinom(ngenes*ncells, mu=10, size=2), ngenes, ncells)
colnames(counts) <- paste0("Cell", 1:ncells)
rownames(counts) <- paste0("Gene", 1:ngenes)
so <- CreateSeuratObject(counts = counts)
so@meta.data <- cbind(so@meta.data, sample=sp, cluster=clst)

y <- Seurat2PB(so, sample="sample", cluster="cluster")

## End(Not run)
```

---

spliceVariants

*Identify Genes with Splice Variants*


---

**Description**

Identify genes exhibiting evidence for splice variants (alternative exon usage/transcript isoforms) from exon-level count data using negative binomial generalized linear models.

**Usage**

```
spliceVariants(y, geneID, dispersion=NULL, group=NULL, estimate.genewise.disp=TRUE,
               trace=FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| y                      | either a matrix of exon-level counts or a <code>DGEList</code> object with (at least) elements <code>counts</code> (table of counts summarized at the exon level) and <code>samples</code> (data frame containing information about experimental group, library size and normalization factor for the library size). Each row of <code>y</code> should represent one exon. |
| geneID                 | vector of length equal to the number of rows of <code>y</code> , which provides the gene identifier for each exon in <code>y</code> . These identifiers are used to group the relevant exons into genes for the gene-level analysis of splice variation.   |
| dispersion             | negative binomial dispersion. Single numeric value.  |
| group                  | factor supplying the experimental group/condition to which each sample (column of <code>y</code> ) belongs. If <code>NULL</code> (default) the function will try to extract if from <code>y</code> , which only works if <code>y</code> is a <code>DGEList</code> object.  |
| estimate.genewise.disp | logical, should genewise dispersions (as opposed to a common dispersion value) be computed if the dispersion argument is <code>NULL</code> ?   |
| trace                  | logical, whether or not verbose comments should be printed as function is run. Default is <code>FALSE</code> .   |

## Details

This function can be used to identify genes showing evidence of splice variation (i.e. alternative splicing, alternative exon usage, transcript isoforms). A negative binomial generalized linear model is used to assess evidence, for each gene, given the counts for the exons for each gene, by fitting a model with an interaction between exon and experimental group and comparing this model (using a likelihood ratio test) to a null model which does not contain the interaction. Genes that show significant evidence for an interaction between exon and experimental group by definition show evidence for splice variation, as this indicates that the observed differences between the exon counts between the different experimental groups cannot be explained by consistent differential expression of the gene across all exons. The function `topTags` can be used to display the results of `spliceVariants` with genes ranked by evidence for splice variation.

## Value

`spliceVariants` returns a `DGEEExact` object, which contains a table of results for the test of differential splicing between experimental groups (alternative exon usage), a data frame containing the gene identifiers for which results were obtained and the dispersion estimate(s) used in the statistical models and testing.

## Author(s)

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

## See Also

[estimateExonGenewiseDisp](#) for more information about estimating genewise dispersion values from exon-level counts. [DGEList](#) for more information about the `DGEList` class. [topTags](#) for more information on displaying ranked results from `spliceVariants`. [estimateCommonDisp](#) and related functions for estimating the dispersion parameter for the negative binomial model.

## Examples

```
# generate exon counts from NB, create list object
y<-matrix(rnbinom(40,size=1,mu=10),nrow=10)
d<-DGEList(counts=y,group=rep(1:2,each=2))
genes <- rep(c("gene.1","gene.2"), each=5)
disp <- 0.2
spliceVariants(d, genes, disp)
```

---

`splitIntoGroups`

*Split the Counts or Pseudocounts from a DGEList Object According To Group*

---

## Description

Split the counts from a `DGEList` object according to group, creating a list where each element consists of a numeric matrix of counts for a particular experimental group. Given a pair of groups, split pseudocounts for these groups, creating a list where each element is a matrix of pseudocounts for a particular group.

**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
splitIntoGroups(y, ...)
## Default S3 method:
splitIntoGroups(y, group=NULL, ...)
splitIntoGroupsPseudo(pseudo, group, pair)
```

**Arguments**

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <code>y</code>      | matrix of counts or a <code>DGEList</code> object.                           |
| <code>group</code>  | vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each library.   |
| <code>pseudo</code> | numeric matrix of quantile-adjusted pseudocounts to be split                 |
| <code>pair</code>   | vector of length two stating pair of groups to be split for the pseudocounts |
| <code>...</code>    | other arguments that are not currently used.                                 |

**Value**

`splitIntoGroups` outputs a list in which each element is a matrix of count counts for an individual group. `splitIntoGroupsPseudo` outputs a list with two elements, in which each element is a numeric matrix of (pseudo-)count data for one of the groups specified.

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy

**Examples**

```
# generate raw counts from NB, create list object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(80, size=1, mu=10), nrow=20)
d <- DGEList(counts=y, group=rep(1:2, each=2), lib.size=rep(c(1000:1001), 2))
rownames(d$counts) <- paste("gene", 1:nrow(d$counts), sep=".")
z1 <- splitIntoGroups(d)
z2 <- splitIntoGroupsPseudo(d$counts, d$group, pair=c(1,2))
```

---

subsetting

---

*Subset DGEList, DGEGLM, DGEEExact and DGELRT Objects*


---

**Description**

Extract a subset of a `DGEList`, `DGEGLM`, `DGEEExact` or `DGELRT` object.



**Usage**

```
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
object[i, j, keep.lib.sizes=TRUE]
## S3 method for class 'DGEGLM'
object[i, j]
## S3 method for class 'DGEEexact'
object[i, j]
## S3 method for class 'DGELRT'
object[i, j]
## S3 method for class 'TopTags'
object[i, j]
```

**Arguments**

**object** object of class `DGEList`, `DGEGLM`, `DGEEexact` or `DGELRT`. For `subsetListOfArrays`, any list of conformal matrices and vectors.

**i, j** elements to extract. `i` subsets the genes while `j` subsets the libraries. Note that columns of `DGEGLM`, `DGEEexact` and `DGELRT` objects cannot be subsetted.

**keep.lib.sizes** logical, if `TRUE` the `lib.sizes` will be kept unchanged on output, otherwise they will be recomputed as the column sums of the counts of the remaining rows.

**Details**

`i, j` may take any values acceptable for the matrix components of `object` of class `DGEList`. See the [Extract](#) help entry for more details on subsetting matrices. For `DGEGLM`, `DGEEexact` and `DGELRT` objects, only rows (i.e. `i`) may be subsetted.

**Value**

An object of the same class as `object` holding data from the specified subset of rows and columns.

**Author(s)**

Davis McCarthy, Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[Extract](#) in the base package.

**Examples**

```
d <- matrix(rnbinom(16,size=1,mu=10),4,4)
rownames(d) <- c("a","b","c","d")
colnames(d) <- c("A1","A2","B1","B2")
d <- DGEList(counts=d,group=factor(c("A","A","B","B")))
d[1:2,]
d[1:2,2]
d[,2]
d <- estimateCommonDisp(d)
```

```
results <- exactTest(d)
results[1:2,]
# NB: cannot subset columns for DGEEExact objects
```

---

sumTechReps

*Sum Over Replicate Samples*

---

### Description

Condense the columns of a matrix or DGEList object so that counts are summed over technical replicate samples.

### Usage

```
## Default S3 method:
sumTechReps(x, ID=colnames(x), ...)
## S3 method for class 'DGEList'
sumTechReps(x, ID=colnames(x), ...)
## S3 method for class 'SummarizedExperiment'
sumTechReps(x, ID, ...)
```

### Arguments

|     |   |
|-----|---|
| x   | a numeric matrix or DGEList object.     |
| ID  | sample identifier.                      |
| ... | other arguments are not currently used. |

### Details

A new matrix or DGEList object is computed in which the counts for technical replicate samples are replaced by their sums.

### Value

A data object of the same class as x with a column for each unique value of ID. For a SummarizedExperiment object, it is converted into a DGEList object. Columns are in the same order as the ID values first occur in the ID vector.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth and Yifang Hu

### See Also

[rowsum](#).

**Examples**

```
x <- matrix(rpois(8*3,lambda=5),8,3)
colnames(x) <- c("a","a","b")
sumTechReps(x)
```

---

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| systematicSubset | <i>Take a systematic subset of indices.</i> |
|------------------|---|

---

**Description**

Take a systematic subset of indices stratified by a ranking variable.

**Usage**

```
systematicSubset(n, order.by)
```

**Arguments**

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| n        | integer giving the size of the subset.                         |
| order.by | numeric vector of the values by which the indices are ordered. |

**Value**

systematicSubset returns a vector of size n.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[order](#)

**Examples**

```
y <- rnorm(100, 1, 1)
systematicSubset(20, y)
```

---

`thinCounts`*Binomial or Multinomial Thinning of Counts*

---

**Description**

Reduce the size of Poisson-like counts by binomial thinning.

**Usage**

```
thinCounts(x, prob=NULL, target.size=min(colSums(x)))
```

**Arguments**

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>x</code>           | numeric vector or array of non-negative integers.   |
| <code>prob</code>        | the expected proportion of the events to keep. Either a unit vector or of same length as <code>x</code> .   |
| <code>target.size</code> | the desired total column counts. Either a unit vector or of the same length as <code>NCOL{x}</code> . Must be not greater than column sum of <code>x</code> . Ignored if <code>prob</code> is not <code>NULL</code> . |

**Details**

If `prob` is not `NULL`, then this function calls `rbinom` with `size=x` and `prob=prob` to generate the new counts. This is classic binomial thinning. The new column sums are random, with expected values determined by `prob`.

If `prob` is `NULL`, then this function does multinomial thinning of the counts to achieve specified column totals. The default behavior is to thin the columns to have the same column sum, equal to the smallest column sum of `x`.

If the elements of `x` are Poisson, then binomial thinning produces new Poisson random variables with expected values reduced by factor `prob`. If the elements of each column of `x` are multinomial, then multinomial thinning produces a new multinomial observation with a reduced sum.

**Value**

A vector or array of the same dimensions as `x`, with thinned counts.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**Examples**

```
x <- rpois(10,lambda=10)
thinCounts(x,prob=0.5)
```

---

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| topSpliceDGE | <i>Top table of differentially spliced genes or exons</i> |
|--------------|---|

---

**Description**

Top table ranking the most differentially spliced genes or exons.

**Usage**

```
topSpliceDGE(lrt, test="Simes", number=10, FDR=1)
```

**Arguments**

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| lrt    | DGELRT object produced by diffSpliceDGE.   |
| test   | character string, possible values are "Simes", "gene" or "exon". "exon" gives exon-level tests for each exon. "gene" gives gene-level tests for each gene. "Simes" gives genewise p-values derived from the exon-level tests after Simes adjustment for each gene. |
| number | integer, maximum number of rows to output.   |
| FDR    | numeric, only show exons or genes with false discovery rate less than this cutoff.   |

**Details**

Ranks genes or exons by evidence for differential splicing. The exon-level tests test for differences between each exon and all the exons for the same gene. The gene-level tests test for any differences in exon usage between experimental conditions.

The Simes method processes the exon-level p-values to give an overall call of differential splicing for each gene. It returns the minimum Simes-adjusted p-values for each gene.

The gene-level tests are likely to be powerful for genes in which several exons are differentially splices. The Simes p-values is likely to be more powerful when only a minority of the exons for a gene are differentially spliced. The exon-level tests are not recommended for formal error rate control.

**Value**

A data.frame with any annotation columns found in lrt plus the following columns

|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| NExons    | number of exons if test="Simes" or "gene"   |
| Gene.Exon | exon annotation if test="exon"  |
| logFC     | log-fold change of one exon vs all the exons for the same gene (if test="exon")                   |
| exon.LR   | LR-statistics for exons (if test="exon" and the object for diffSpliceDGE was produced by glmFit)  |
| exon.F    | F-statistics for exons (if test="exon" and the object for diffSpliceDGE was produced by glmQLFit) |

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| gene.LR | LR-statistics for genes (if test="gene" and the object for diffSpliceDGE was produced by glmFit)  |
| gene.F  | F-statistics for genes (if test="gene" and the object for diffSpliceDGE was produced by glmQLFit) |
| P.Value | p-value   |
| FDR     | false discovery rate  |

**Author(s)**

Yunshun Chen and Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[diffSpliceDGE](#).

---

topTags

*Table of the Top Differentially Expressed Genes/Tags*

---

**Description**

Extracts the most differentially expressed genes (or sequence tags) from a test object, ranked either by p-value or by absolute log-fold-change.

**Usage**

```
topTags(object, n = 10, adjust.method = "BH", sort.by = "PValue", p.value = 1)
```

**Arguments**

|               |  |
|---------------|--|
| object        | a <a href="#">DGEEexact</a> or <a href="#">DGELRT</a> object containing test statistics and p-values. Usually created by <a href="#">exactTest</a> , <a href="#">glmLRT</a> , <a href="#">glmTreat</a> or <a href="#">glmQLFTest</a> . |
| n             | integer, maximum number of genes/tags to return.   |
| adjust.method | character string specifying the method used to adjust p-values for multiple testing. See <a href="#">p.adjust</a> for possible values.   |
| sort.by       | character string specifying the sort method. Possibilities are "PValue" for p-value, "logFC" for absolute log-fold change or "none" for no sorting.  |
| p.value       | numeric cutoff value for adjusted p-values. Only tags with adjusted p-values equal or lower than specified are returned.   |

## Details

This function is closely analogous to the `topTable` function in the `limma` package. It accepts a test statistic object created by any of the `edgeR` functions `exactTest`, `glmLRT`, `glmTreat` or `glmQLFTest` and extracts a readable `data.frame` of the most differentially expressed genes. The `data.frame` collates the annotation and differential expression statistics for the top genes. The `data.frame` is wrapped in a `TopTags` output object that records the test statistic used and the multiple testing adjustment method.

`TopTags` objects will return dimensions and hence functions such as `dim`, `nrow` or `ncol` are defined on them. `TopTags` objects also have a `show` method so that printing produces a compact summary of their contents.

`topTags` permits ranking by fold-change but the authors do not recommend fold-change ranking or fold-change cutoffs for routine RNA-seq analysis. The p-value ranking is intended to more biologically meaningful, especially if the p-values were computed using `glmTreat`.

## Value

An object of class `TopTags`, which is a list-based class with the following components:

`table` a `data.frame` containing differential expression results for the top genes in sorted order. The number of rows is the smaller of `n` and the number of genes with adjusted p-value less than or equal to `p.value`. The `data.frame` includes all the annotation columns from `object$genes` and all statistic columns from `object$table` plus one of:

`FDR`: false discovery rate (only when `adjust.method` is "BH", "BY" or "fdr")  
`FWER`: family-wise error rate (only when `adjust.method` is "holm", "hochberg", "hommel" or "bonferroni").

`adjust.method` character string specifying the method used to adjust p-values for multiple testing, same as input argument.  
`comparison` character vector giving the names of the two groups being compared (for `DGEEexact` objects) or the `glm` contrast being tested (for `DGELRT` objects).  
`test` character string stating the name of the test.

## Note

The terms 'tag' and 'gene' are used synonymously on this page and refer to the rows of `object`. In general, the rows might be genes, sequence tags, transcripts, exons or whatever type of genomic feature is appropriate for the analysis at hand.

## Author(s)

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy, Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth

## References

Chen Y, Lun ATL, and Smyth, GK (2016). From reads to genes to pathways: differential expression analysis of RNA-Seq experiments using `Rsubread` and the `edgeR` quasi-likelihood pipeline. *F1000Research* 5, 1438. <https://f1000research.com/articles/5-1438>

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. doi:10.1093/nar/gks042

Robinson MD, Smyth GK (2008). Small-sample estimation of negative binomial dispersion, with applications to SAGE data. *Biostatistics* 9, 321-332.

Robinson MD, Smyth GK (2007). Moderated statistical tests for assessing differences in tag abundance. *Bioinformatics* 23, 2881-2887.

### See Also

[exactTest](#), [glmLRT](#), [glmTreat](#), [glmQLFTest](#), [dim.TopTags](#), [p.adjust](#).

### Examples

```
# generate raw counts from NB, create list object
y <- matrix(rnbinom(80,size=1,mu=10),nrow=20)
d <- DGEList(counts=y,group=rep(1:2,each=2),lib.size=rep(c(1000:1001),2))
rownames(d$counts) <- paste("gene",1:nrow(d$counts),sep=".")

# estimate common dispersion and find differences in expression
# here we demonstrate the 'exact' methods, but the use of topTags is
# the same for a GLM analysis
d <- estimateCommonDisp(d)
de <- exactTest(d)

# look at top 10
topTags(de)
# Can specify how many genes to view
tp <- topTags(de, n=15)
# Here we view top 15
tp
# Or order by fold change instead
topTags(de,sort.by="logFC")
```

---

validDGEList

*Check for Valid DGEList object*

---

### Description

Check for existence of standard components of DGEList object.

### Usage

```
validDGEList(y)
```

### Arguments

y                    DGEList object.



**Details**

This function checks that the standard counts and samples components of a `DGEList` object are present.

**Value**

`DGEList` with missing components added.

**Author(s)**

Gordon Smyth

**See Also**

[DGEList](#)

**Examples**

```
counts <- matrix(rpois(4*2,lambda=5),4,2)
dge <- new("DGEList", list(counts=counts))
validDGEList(dge)
```

---

voomLmFit

*Apply voom-lmFit Pipeline While Accounting for Loss of Residual DF  
Due to Exact Zeros*

---

**Description**

Transform count data to log<sub>2</sub>-counts per million (logCPM), estimate voom precision weights and fit limma linear models while allowing for loss of residual degrees of freedom due to exact zeros.

**Usage**

```
voomLmFit(counts, design = NULL, block = NULL, prior.weights = NULL,
  sample.weights = FALSE, var.design = NULL, var.group = NULL, prior.n = 10,
  lib.size = NULL, normalize.method = "none",
  span = 0.5, adaptive.span = FALSE, plot = FALSE, save.plot = FALSE, keep.EList = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

|        |  |
|--------|--|
| counts | a numeric matrix containing raw counts, or a <code>DGEList</code> object, or a <code>SummarizedExperiment</code> object containing raw counts. Counts must be non-negative. Fractional counts are permitted but NAs are not. |
| design | design matrix with rows corresponding to samples and columns to coefficients to be estimated. Defaults to the unit vector meaning that samples are treated as replicates.  |
| block  | vector or factor specifying a blocking variable on the samples. Has length equal to <code>ncol(counts)</code> . Samples within each block are assumed to be correlated.  |

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <code>prior.weights</code>    | prior weights. Can be a numeric matrix of individual weights of same dimensions as the counts, or a numeric vector of sample weights with length equal to <code>ncol(counts)</code> , or a numeric vector of gene weights with length equal to <code>nrow(counts)</code> .   |
| <code>sample.weights</code>   | logical value, if TRUE then empirical sample quality weights will be estimated.  |
| <code>var.design</code>       | optional design matrix for the sample weights. Defaults to the sample-specific model whereby each sample has a distinct variance.  |
| <code>var.group</code>        | optional vector or factor indicating groups to have different array weights. This is another way to specify <code>var.design</code> for groupwise sample weights.  |
| <code>prior.n</code>          | prior number of genes for squeezing the weights towards equality. Larger values squeeze the sample weights more strongly towards equality.   |
| <code>lib.size</code>         | numeric vector containing total library sizes for each sample. Defaults to the normalized (effective) library sizes in counts if counts is a <code>DGEList</code> or to the columnwise count totals if counts is a matrix.   |
| <code>normalize.method</code> | the microarray-style normalization method to be applied to the logCPM values (if any). Choices are as for the <code>method</code> argument of <code>normalizeBetweenArrays</code> when the data is single-channel. Any normalization factors found in counts will still be used even if <code>normalize.method="none"</code> . |
| <code>span</code>             | width of the smoothing window used for the lowess mean-variance trend. Expressed as a proportion between 0 and 1.  |
| <code>adaptive.span</code>    | logical. If TRUE, then an optimal value for span will be chosen depending on the number of genes.  |
| <code>plot</code>             | logical, should a plot of the mean-variance trend be displayed?  |
| <code>save.plot</code>        | logical, should the coordinates and line of the plot be saved in the output?   |
| <code>keep.EList</code>       | logical. If TRUE, then the normalized log2-CPM values and voom weights will be saved in the component <code>EList</code> of the output object.   |

## Details

This function adapts the limma voom method (Law et al, 2014) to allow for loss of residual degrees of freedom due to exact zero counts (Lun and Smyth, 2017). The loss residual df occurs when all the counts in a group are zero or when there are blocking factors that can fit zero counts exactly. The function transforms the counts to the log2-CPM scale, computes voom precision weights and fits limma linear models. Residual df are computed similarly as for `glmQLFit`.

The function is analogous to calling `voom` followed by `duplicateCorrelation` and `lmFit` except for the modified residual df values and residual standard deviation `sigma` values. This function returns `df.residual` values that are less than or equal to those from `lmFit` and `sigma` values that are greater than or equal to those from `lmFit`. `voomLmFit` is more robust to zero counts than calling `voom`, `duplicateCorrelation` and `lmFit` separately and provides more rigorous error rate control.

If `block` is specified, then the intra-block correlation is estimated using `duplicateCorrelation`. In that case, the voom weights and the intra-block correlation are each estimated twice to achieve effective convergence.

Empirical sample quality weights will be estimated if `sample.weights=TRUE` or if `var.design` or `var.group` are non-NULL (Liu et al 2015). In that case, `voomLmFit` is analogous to running `voomWithQualityWeights` followed by `lmFit`.

voomLmFit is usually followed by running [eBayes](#) on the fitted model object.

If `adaptive.span=TRUE`, then an optimal value for `span` is chosen by `chooseLowessSpan` with `n=nrow(counts)`.

### Value

An `MArrayLM` object containing linear model fits for each row of data. The object includes a `targets` data.frame component containing sample annotation. Columns of `targets` include `lib.size` and `sample.weight` (if `sample.weights=TRUE`).

If `save.plot=TRUE` then the output object will include components `voom.xy` and `voom.line`. `voom.xy` contains the x and y coordinates of the points in the voom mean-variance plot in the same format as produced by [xy.coords](#) and `voom.line` contains the estimated trend curve.

If `keep.EList=TRUE` then the output object includes component `EList`, which is an `EList` object in the same format as produced by `voom` containing the voom log2-CPM values and the voom weights.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth

### References

Law CW, Chen Y, Shi W, Smyth GK (2014). Voom: precision weights unlock linear model analysis tools for RNA-seq read counts. *Genome Biology* 15, R29. doi:10.1186/gb2014152r29. See also the Preprint Version at <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/VoomPreprint.pdf> incorporating some notational corrections.

Lun ATL, Smyth GK (2017). No counts, no variance: allowing for loss of degrees of freedom when assessing biological variability from RNA-seq data. *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* 16(2), 83-93. doi:10.1515/sagmb20170010

Liu R, Holik AZ, Su S, Jansz N, Chen K, Leong HS, Blewitt ME, Asselin-Labat ML, Smyth GK, Ritchie ME (2015). Why weight? Modelling sample and observational level variability improves power in RNA-seq analyses. *Nucleic Acids Research* 43, e97. doi:10.1093/nar/gkv412

### See Also

[voom](#), [lmFit](#), [voomWithQualityWeights](#), [duplicateCorrelation](#), [arrayWeights](#), [MArrayLM-class](#).

---

weightedCondLogLikDerDelta

*Weighted Conditional Log-Likelihood in Terms of Delta*

---

### Description

Weighted conditional log-likelihood parameterized in terms of delta ( $\phi / (\phi + 1)$ ) for a given gene, maximized to find the smoothed (moderated) estimate of the dispersion parameter

**Usage**

```
weightedCondLogLikDerDelta(y, delta, tag, prior.n = 10, ntags = nrow(y[[1]]), der = 0)
```

**Arguments**

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>       | list with elements comprising the matrices of count data (or pseudocounts) for the different groups   |
| <code>delta</code>   | delta ( $\phi / (\phi + 1)$ ) parameter of negative binomial  |
| <code>tag</code>     | gene at which the weighted conditional log-likelihood is evaluated  |
| <code>prior.n</code> | smoothing parameter that indicates the weight to put on the common likelihood compared to the individual gene's likelihood; default 10 means that the common likelihood is given 10 times the weight of the individual gene's likelihood in the estimation of the genewise dispersion |
| <code>ntags</code>   | number of genes in the dataset to be analysed   |
| <code>der</code>     | which derivative to evaluate, either 0 (the function), 1 (first derivative) or 2 (second derivative).   |

**Details**

This function computes the weighted conditional log-likelihood for a given gene, parameterized in terms of delta. The value of delta that maximizes the weighted conditional log-likelihood is converted back to the phi scale, and this value is the estimate of the smoothed (moderated) dispersion parameter for that particular gene. The delta scale for convenience (delta is bounded between 0 and 1). Users should note that 'tag' and 'gene' are synonymous when interpreting the names of the arguments for this function.

**Value**

numeric value giving the function or derivative evaluated for the given gene and delta.

**Author(s)**

Mark Robinson, Davis McCarthy

**Examples**

```
counts<-matrix(rnbinom(20,size=1,mu=10),nrow=5)
d<-DGEList(counts=counts,group=rep(1:2,each=2),lib.size=rep(c(1000:1001),2))
y<-splitIntoGroups(d)
l11<-weightedCondLogLikDerDelta(y,delta=0.5,tag=1,prior.n=10,der=0)
l12<-weightedCondLogLikDerDelta(y,delta=0.5,tag=1,prior.n=10,der=1)
```

WLEB

*Weighted Likelihood Empirical Bayes***Description**

Compute empirical Bayes moderated parameter estimators using a weighted likelihood approach.

**Usage**

```
WLEB(theta, loglik, prior.n = 5, covariate = NULL, trend.method = "locfit", span = NULL,
      overall = TRUE, trend = TRUE, individual = TRUE, m0 = NULL, m0.out = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| theta        | numeric vector of values of the parameter at which the log-likelihoods are calculated.   |
| loglik       | numeric matrix of log-likelihood of all the candidates at those values of parameter.   |
| prior.n      | numeric scaler, estimate of the prior weight, i.e. the smoothing parameter that indicates the weight to put on the common likelihood compared to the individual's likelihood.  |
| covariate    | numeric vector of values across which a parameter trend is fitted  |
| trend.method | method for estimating the parameter trend. Possible values are "none", "movingave", "loess", "locfit" or "locfit.mixed". The latter options cause <code>movingAverageByCol()</code> , <code>loessBycol()</code> and <code>locfitByCol()</code> respectively to be called to smooth <code>loglik</code> by the covariate values. The "locfit.mixed" method is the same as "locfit" but uses a polynomial of degree 1 for lowly expressed genes. |
| span         | width of the smoothing window, as a proportion of the data set.  |
| overall      | logical, should a single value of the parameter which maximizes the sum of all the log-likelihoods be estimated?   |
| trend        | logical, should a parameter trend (against the covariate) which maximizes the local shared log-likelihoods be estimated?   |
| individual   | logical, should individual estimates of all the candidates after applying empirical Bayes method along the trend be estimated?   |
| m0           | numeric matrix of local shared log-likelihoods. If NULL, it will be calculated using the method selected by <code>trend.method</code> .  |
| m0.out       | logical, should local shared log-likelihoods be included in the output?  |

**Details**

This function implements a very general empirical Bayes strategy outlined by McCarthy et al (2012). McCarthy et al used the method to estimate genewise negative binomial dispersion parameters, but here the method is generalized to apply to any parameter and any likelihood function.

The method gives similar results to parametric empirical Bayes with a conjugate prior, when a conjugate prior exists, but does not require the prior distribution to be specified. The prior distribution is instead inferred from the pooled likelihood, i.e., from the likelihood that would be arise from pooling all the cases or from pooling all the cases with similar covariate values.

The function assumes a series of cases. Each case leads to data set from which a parameter ( $\theta$ ) is to be estimated. For each case, the log-likelihood function has been evaluated over a grid of possible values for  $\theta$ . The function takes as input the matrix of log-likelihood values where the rows correspond to cases and the columns correspond to putative parameter values.

Each case is associated with a covariate value that might affect  $\theta$ . The "overall" parameter estimate is the maximum likelihood estimator of  $\theta$  that arises if the likelihood is averaged over cases and then maximized over  $\theta$ . The "trend" parameter estimates are estimates for  $\theta$  that arise if each column of `loglik` is replaced by a smooth trend with respect to the covariate. The "individual" parameter estimate for each case is a compromise between the maximum likelihood estimate for that case alone and a global parameter estimate computed from all the cases, the latter being either the overall estimate (if `trend.method="none"` or the trend estimate (otherwise).

### Value

A list with the following:

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <code>overall</code>       | the parameter estimate that maximizes the sum of all the log-likelihoods.                             |
| <code>trend</code>         | the estimated trended parameters against the covariate.   |
| <code>individual</code>    | the individual estimates of all the candidates after applying empirical Bayes method along the trend. |
| <code>shared.loglik</code> | the estimated numeric matrix of local shared log-likelihoods  |

### Author(s)

Yunshun Chen, Gordon Smyth

### References

McCarthy, DJ, Chen, Y, Smyth, GK (2012). Differential expression analysis of multifactor RNA-Seq experiments with respect to biological variation. *Nucleic Acids Research* 40, 4288-4297. [doi:10.1093/nar/gks042](https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gks042)

### See Also

[locfitByCol](#), [movingAverageByCol](#) and [loessByCol](#) implement the local fit, moving average or loess smoothers.

### Examples

```
y <- matrix(rpois(100, lambda=10), ncol=4)
theta <- 7:14
loglik <- matrix(0, nrow=nrow(y), ncol=length(theta))
for(i in 1:nrow(y))
  for(j in 1:length(theta))
    loglik[i,j] <- sum(dpois(y[i,], theta[j] ,log=TRUE))
```

```
covariate <- log(rowSums(y))
out <- WLEB(theta, loglik, prior.n=3, covariate)
out
```

---

zscoreNBinom

*Z-score Equivalents of Negative Binomial Deviate*

---

### Description

Compute z-score equivalents of negative binomial random deviates.

### Usage

```
zscoreNBinom(q, size, mu, method = "midp")
```

### Arguments

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| q      | numeric vector or matrix of non-negative quantiles.   |
| size   | numeric vector of non-negative size parameters.   |
| mu     | numeric vector of means.  |
| method | method for converting from discrete to continuous distribution. Possible values are "midp" or "random". |

### Details

The mid-p method (`method=="midp"`) applies a continuity correction by splitting the probability mass of each integer in two. It computes the mid-p tail probability of  $q$ , then converts to the standard normal deviate with the same cumulative probability distribution value. Care is taken to do the computations accurately in both tails of the distributions.

The randomized method (`method=="random"`) computes randomized quantile residuals (Dunn and Smyth, 1996). In this method, the tail probabilities are randomized over the possible values covered by the discrete integer counts. If  $q$  follows a negative binomial distribution with the size and mean correctly specified, then the z-values generated by the randomized method are exactly standard normal.

Non-integer values of  $q$  are allowed. The mid-p method handles non-integer values by interpolation while the randomized method rounds  $q$  to integers.

### Value

Numeric vector or matrix giving equivalent quantiles from the standard normal distribution.

### Author(s)

Gordon Smyth

**References**

Berry, G., & Armitage, P. (1995). Mid-P confidence intervals: a brief review. *The Statistician*, 417-423.

Dunn, K. P., and Smyth, G. K. (1996). Randomized quantile residuals. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* **5**, 1-10. <https://gksmyth.github.io/pubs/residual.html>

**See Also**

[pnbinom](#), [qnorm](#) in the stats package.

**Examples**

```
zscoreNBinom(c(0,10,100), mu=10, size=10)
```



# Index

- \* **Data exploration**
  - cpm, [21](#)
  - gini, [72](#)
  - plotMDS.DGEList, [121](#)
  - plotSmear, [126](#)
  - thinCounts, [156](#)
- \* **Differential exon usage**
  - diffSpliceDGE, [32](#)
  - plotExonUsage, [118](#)
  - plotSpliceDGE, [128](#)
  - spliceVariants, [150](#)
- \* **Differential expression**
  - binomTest, [12](#)
  - decideTests, [25](#)
  - exactTest, [62](#)
  - glmFit, [73](#)
  - glmLRT, [75](#)
  - glmQLFit, [77](#)
  - glmQLFTest, [81](#)
- \* **Differential methylation**
  - modelMatrixMeth, [105](#)
  - readBismark2DGE, [135](#)
- \* **Dispersion estimation**
  - adjustedProfileLik, [7](#)
  - commonCondLogLikDerDelta, [19](#)
  - condLogLikDerSize, [20](#)
  - dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise, [40](#)
  - dispCoxReidSplineTrend, [42](#)
  - estimateCommonDisp, [47](#)
  - estimateDisp, [48](#)
  - estimateExonGenewiseDisp, [51](#)
  - estimateGLMCommonDisp, [52](#)
  - estimateGLMRobustDisp, [54](#)
  - estimateGLMTagwiseDisp, [55](#)
  - estimateGLMTrendedDisp, [57](#)
  - estimateTagwiseDisp, [59](#)
  - estimateTrendedDisp, [61](#)
  - getPriorN, [70](#)
  - glmQLFit, [77](#)
  - gof, [87](#)
  - meanvar, [99](#)
  - plotBCV, [117](#)
  - plotMeanVar2, [123](#)
  - plotQLDisp, [125](#)
  - weightedCondLogLikDerDelta, [163](#)
  - WLEB, [165](#)
- \* **Documentation**
  - edgeR-package, [4](#)
  - edgeRUsersGuide, [44](#)
- \* **Gene set testing**
  - goana.DGELRT, [85](#)
  - roast.DGEGLM, [138](#)
  - roast.DGEList, [140](#)
  - romer.DGEGLM, [142](#)
  - romer.DGEList, [144](#)
- \* **Model fit**
  - glmFit, [73](#)
  - glmLRT, [75](#)
  - glmQLFit, [77](#)
  - glmQLFTest, [81](#)
  - maPlot, [96](#)
  - mglm, [102](#)
  - nbinomDeviance, [107](#)
  - nbinomUnitDeviance, [108](#)
  - plotMD.DGEList, [119](#)
  - plotSmear, [126](#)
  - predFC, [129](#)
  - voomLmFit, [161](#)
- \* **Normalization**
  - equalizeLibSizes, [45](#)
  - getNormLibSizes, [69](#)
  - goodTuring, [89](#)
  - normalizeChIPtoInput, [112](#)
  - normLibSizes, [114](#)
  - q2qnbinom, [133](#)
  - scaleOffset, [147](#)
- \* **Reading data files**
  - read10X, [134](#)

- readBismark2DGE, 135
- readDGE, 136
- \* **Transcript expression**
  - catchSalmon, 16
- \* **edgeR classes**
  - as.data.frame, 9
  - as.matrix, 10
  - cbind, 18
  - DGEEExact-class, 26
  - DGEGLM-class, 27
  - DGEList, 28
  - DGEList-class, 30
  - DGELRT-class, 31
  - dim, 34
  - dimnames, 35
  - featureCounts2DGEList, 66
  - getCounts, 68
  - head, 91
  - makeCompressedMatrix, 93
  - SE2DGEList, 148
  - Seurat2PB, 149
  - subsetting, 152
  - validDGEList, 160
- \* **normalization**
  - normalizeBetweenArrays.DGEList, 111
- [.CompressedMatrix
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- [.DGEEExact (subsetting), 152
- [.DGEGLM (subsetting), 152
- [.DGELRT (subsetting), 152
- [.DGEList (subsetting), 152
- [.TopTags (subsetting), 152
- [<- .CompressedMatrix
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- Ø2.Classes, 35
- addPriorCount, 6, 11, 12, 129, 130
- adjustedProfileLik, 7
- arrayWeights, 163
- as.data.frame, 9, 9
- as.dist, 123
- as.matrix, 10, 10, 95
- as.matrix.CompressedMatrix
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- as.matrix.DGEList, 71
- aveLogCPM, 6, 7, 11, 23
- binMeanVar (meanvar), 99
- binom.test, 13
- binomTest, 12, 65
- calcNormFactors (normLibSizes), 114
- calcNormOffsetsforChIP
  - (normalizeChIPtoInput), 112
- camera, 14, 15
- camera.DGEGLM, 139
- camera.DGEList, 142
- cameraPR.DGELRT (camera), 14
- catchKallisto (catchSalmon), 16
- catchRSEM (catchSalmon), 16
- catchSalmon, 16
- cbind, 18, 18, 19
- cbind.CompressedMatrix
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- cmdscales, 123
- commonCondLogLikDerDelta, 19
- CompressedMatrix, 65
- CompressedMatrix
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- CompressedMatrix-class
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- condLogLikDerDelta (condLogLikDerSize), 20
- condLogLikDerSize, 20
- cpm, 6, 7, 12, 21
- cpmByGroup (cpm), 21
- cut, 24
- cutWithMinN, 24, 42
- decideTests, 25, 26, 120
- designAsFactor (mg1m), 102
- DGEEExact, 158
- DGEEExact-class, 26
- DGEGLM-class, 27
- DGEList, 19, 28, 29, 31, 63, 66, 71, 132, 135–137, 151, 161
- DGEList-class, 30
- DGELRT, 158
- DGELRT-class, 31
- diffSpliceDGE, 32, 128, 158
- dim, 34, 35
- dim.CompressedMatrix
  - (makeCompressedMatrix), 93
- dim.DGEEExact, 27
- dim.DGEGLM, 28
- dim.DGEList, 31
- dim.DGELRT, 32

- dim.TopTags, [160](#)
- dimnames, [35](#), [36](#)
- dimnames.DGEEExact, [27](#)
- dimnames.DGEGLM, [28](#)
- dimnames.DGEList, [31](#)
- dimnames.DGELRT, [32](#)
- dimnames<- .DGEEExact (dimnames), [35](#)
- dimnames<- .DGEGLM (dimnames), [35](#)
- dimnames<- .DGEList (dimnames), [35](#)
- dimnames<- .DGELRT (dimnames), [35](#)
- dispBinTrend, [36](#), [58](#)
- dispCoxReid, [38](#), [52](#), [53](#)
- dispCoxReidInterpolateTagwise, [40](#), [56](#)
- dispCoxReidPowerTrend, [58](#)
- dispCoxReidPowerTrend  
(dispCoxReidSplineTrend), [42](#)
- dispCoxReidSplineTrend, [42](#), [58](#)
- dispDeviance, [52](#), [53](#)
- dispDeviance (dispCoxReid), [38](#)
- dispPearson, [52](#), [53](#)
- dispPearson (dispCoxReid), [38](#)
- dropEmptyLevels, [43](#)
- duplicateCorrelation, [163](#)
  
- eBayes, [163](#)
- edgeR (edgeR-package), [4](#)
- edgeR-package, [4](#)
- edgeRUsersGuide, [44](#)
- equalizeLibSizes, [45](#), [48](#), [63–65](#), [133](#), [134](#)
- estimateCommonDisp, [20](#), [47](#), [50](#), [52](#), [53](#), [57](#),  
[61](#), [62](#), [151](#)
- estimateDisp, [48](#), [88](#)
- estimateExonGenewiseDisp, [51](#), [151](#)
- estimateGLMCommonDisp, [39](#), [50](#), [52](#), [57](#)
- estimateGLMRobustDisp, [54](#)
- estimateGLMTagwiseDisp, [41](#), [50](#), [53–55](#), [55](#),  
[71](#), [88](#)
- estimateGLMTrendedDisp, [38](#), [43](#), [50](#), [53–55](#),  
[57](#), [57](#)
- estimateTagwiseDisp, [48](#), [50](#), [53](#), [57](#), [59](#), [71](#)
- estimateTrendedDisp, [48](#), [61](#)
- exactTest, [62](#), [104](#), [130](#), [160](#)
- exactTestBetaApprox (exactTest), [62](#)
- exactTestByDeviance (exactTest), [62](#)
- exactTestBySmallP (exactTest), [62](#)
- exactTestDoubleTail (exactTest), [62](#)
- expandAsMatrix, [65](#), [94](#), [95](#)
- Extract, [153](#)
  
- factor, [44](#)
- featureCounts2DGEList, [66](#)
- filterByExpr, [67](#)
- findInterval, [110](#)
- fry.DGEGLM (roast.DGEGLM), [138](#)
- fry.DGEList (roast.DGEList), [140](#)
  
- getCounts, [68](#)
- getDispersion (getCounts), [68](#)
- getNormLibSizes, [69](#), [116](#)
- getOffset (getCounts), [68](#)
- getPriorN, [70](#)
- gini, [72](#)
- glmFit, [8](#), [38](#), [49](#), [52](#), [54](#), [56–58](#), [73](#), [76](#), [78](#),  
[79](#), [89](#), [104](#), [107](#), [129](#), [130](#)
- glmLRT, [75](#), [82](#), [160](#)
- glmQLFit, [77](#), [81](#), [82](#), [125](#), [162](#)
- glmQLFTest, [80](#), [81](#), [160](#)
- glmTreat, [83](#), [160](#)
- goana, [87](#)
- goana.default, [86](#)
- goana.DGEEExact (goana.DGELRT), [85](#)
- goana.DGELRT, [85](#)
- gof, [87](#)
- goodTuring, [89](#)
- goodTuringPlot (goodTuring), [89](#)
- goodTuringProportions (goodTuring), [89](#)
  
- head, [91](#), [91](#)
- head.EList, [91](#)
  
- ids2indices, [14](#), [143](#), [144](#)
  
- kegga, [87](#)
- kegga.default, [86](#)
- kegga.DGEEExact (goana.DGELRT), [85](#)
- kegga.DGELRT (goana.DGELRT), [85](#)
  
- length.CompressedMatrix  
(makeCompressedMatrix), [93](#)
- lmFit, [163](#)
- locfitByCol, [166](#)
- locfitByCol (loessByCol), [92](#)
- loess, [93](#)
- loessByCol, [60](#), [61](#), [92](#), [166](#)
  
- makeCompressedMatrix, [93](#)
- maPlot, [96](#), [101](#), [127](#)
- maximizeInterpolant, [41](#), [97](#), [99](#)
- maximizeQuadratic, [98](#)

- MDS, [122](#)
- meanvar, [99](#)
- mglm, [102](#)
- mglmLevenberg, [74](#), [75](#)
- mglmLevenberg (mglm), [102](#)
- mglmOneGroup, [12](#), [74](#), [75](#)
- mglmOneGroup (mglm), [102](#)
- mglmOneWay (mglm), [102](#)
- model.matrix, [105](#), [106](#)
- modelMatrixMeth, [105](#)
- movingAverageByCol, [61](#), [106](#), [166](#)
- mroast, [139](#), [141](#)
- mroast.DGEGLM (roast.DGEGLM), [138](#)
- mroast.DGEList (roast.DGEList), [140](#)
  
- nbinomDeviance, [107](#)
- nbinomUnitDeviance, [108](#), [108](#)
- nearestRefToX, [109](#), [111](#)
- nearestTSS, [110](#)
- normalizeBetweenArrays, [112](#)
- normalizeBetweenArrays.DGEList, [111](#)
- normalizeChIPtoInput, [112](#)
- normalizeCyclicLoess, [111](#)
- normLibSizes, [70](#), [114](#)
  
- Ops.CompressedMatrix  
    (makeCompressedMatrix), [93](#)
- optim, [42](#)
- optimize, [39](#), [47](#), [49](#)
- order, [155](#)
  
- p.adjust, [25](#), [138](#), [141](#), [158](#), [160](#)
- plotBCV, [117](#), [124](#)
- plotExonUsage, [118](#)
- plotMD.DGEEExact (plotMD.DGEList), [119](#)
- plotMD.DGEGLM (plotMD.DGEList), [119](#)
- plotMD.DGEList, [119](#), [124](#), [127](#)
- plotMD.DGELRT (plotMD.DGEList), [119](#)
- plotMD.SummarizedExperiment  
    (plotMD.DGEList), [119](#)
- plotMDS, [123](#)
- plotMDS.DGEList, [101](#), [121](#), [124](#)
- plotMDS.SummarizedExperiment  
    (plotMDS.DGEList), [121](#)
- plotMeanVar, [124](#)
- plotMeanVar (meanvar), [99](#)
- plotMeanVar2, [101](#), [123](#)
- plotQLDisp, [80](#), [82](#), [125](#)
- plotSmear, [97](#), [101](#), [124](#), [126](#)
  
- plotSpliceDGE, [128](#)
- plotWithHighlights, [120](#), [121](#)
- pnbinom, [168](#)
- points, [117](#), [122](#), [125](#)
- predFC, [6](#), [7](#), [129](#)
- processAmplicons, [130](#)
  
- q2qnbinom, [46](#), [133](#)
- q2qpois (q2qnbinom), [133](#)
- qnorm, [168](#)
- qqnorm, [89](#)
- quantile, [24](#)
  
- rbind.CompressedMatrix  
    (makeCompressedMatrix), [93](#)
- rbind.DGEList (cbind), [18](#)
- read.delim, [137](#)
- read10X, [134](#)
- readBismark2DGE, [135](#)
- readDGE, [136](#)
- Roast, [139](#), [141](#)
- roast, [139](#), [141](#), [142](#)
- roast.DGEGLM, [138](#)
- roast.DGEList, [140](#)
- romer, [143–145](#)
- romer.default, [143](#), [145](#)
- romer.DGEGLM, [142](#)
- romer.DGEList, [144](#)
- rowsum, [146](#), [147](#), [154](#)
- rpkm (cpm), [21](#)
- rpkmByGroup (cpm), [21](#)
  
- sage.test, [13](#)
- scaleOffset, [147](#)
- SE2DGEList, [116](#), [148](#)
- Seurat2PB, [149](#)
- show, DGEEExact-method (DGEEExact-class),  
    [26](#)
- show, DGEGLM-method (DGEGLM-class), [27](#)
- show, DGELRT-method (DGELRT-class), [31](#)
- show, TopTags-method (topTags), [158](#)
- spliceVariants, [119](#), [150](#)
- splitIntoGroups, [151](#)
- splitIntoGroupsPseudo  
    (splitIntoGroups), [151](#)
- squeezeVar, [78](#)
- subsetting, [27](#), [28](#), [31](#), [32](#), [152](#)
- sumTechReps, [154](#)
- Sweave, [44](#)

system, [45](#)  
systematicSubset, [52](#), [155](#)  
  
tail.DGEEexact (head), [91](#)  
tail.DGEGLM (head), [91](#)  
tail.DGEList (head), [91](#)  
tail.DGELRT (head), [91](#)  
tail.TopTags (head), [91](#)  
TestResults, [25](#), [26](#)  
text, [122](#)  
thinCounts, [156](#)  
topGO, [87](#)  
topKEGG, [87](#)  
topSpliceDGE, [128](#), [157](#)  
topTable, [159](#)  
topTags, [75](#), [76](#), [82](#), [85](#), [151](#), [158](#)  
TopTags-class (topTags), [158](#)  
treat, [85](#)  
  
uniroot, [39](#)  
  
validDGEList, [160](#)  
voom, [163](#)  
voomLmFit, [161](#)  
voomWithQualityWeights, [163](#)  
  
weightedCondLogLikDerDelta, [163](#)  
WLEB, [165](#)  
  
xy.coords, [163](#)  
  
zscoreNBinom, [167](#)